

Theorem Proving in Lean

Jeremy Avigad
Leonardo de Moura
Soonho Kong

Version 60758dc, updated at 2015-04-28 16:23:49 -0400

Copyright (c) 2014 - 2015, Jeremy Avigad, Leonardo de Moura, and Soonho Kong. All rights reserved. Released under Apache 2.0 license as described in the file LICENSE.

Contents

Contents	3
1 Introduction	6
1.1 Computers and Theorem Proving	6
1.2 About Lean	7
1.3 About this Book	8
2 Dependent Type Theory	9
2.1 Simple Type Theory	9
2.2 Types as Objects	11
2.3 Function Abstraction and Evaluation	13
2.4 Introducing Definitions	16
2.5 Local definitions	18
2.6 Namespaces and Sections	19
2.7 Dependent Types	22
2.8 Implicit Arguments	25
3 Propositions and Proofs	29
3.1 Propositions as Types	29
3.2 Working with Propositions as Types	31
3.3 Propositional Logic	34
3.4 Introducing Auxiliary Subgoals	39
3.5 Classical Logic	39
3.6 Examples of Propositional Validities	41
4 Quantifiers and Equality	44
4.1 The Universal Quantifier	44
4.2 Equality	48
4.3 The Calculation Environment	50
4.4 The Simplifier	52

4.5	The Existential Quantifier	52
5	Interacting with Lean	56
5.1	Displaying Information	56
5.2	Setting Options	58
5.3	Using the Library	59
5.4	Lean’s Emacs Mode	61
5.5	Projects	64
5.6	Notation and Abbreviations	65
5.7	Coercions	67
6	Inductive Types	70
6.1	Enumerated Types	71
6.2	Constructors with Arguments	75
6.3	Inductively Defined Propositions	78
6.4	Defining the Natural Numbers	79
6.5	Other Inductive Types	82
6.6	Generalizations	84
6.7	Heterogeneous Equality	86
6.8	Automatically Generated Constructions	87
6.9	Universe Levels	91
7	Induction and Recursion	92
7.1	Pattern Matching	92
7.2	Structural Recursion and Induction	94
7.3	Dependent Pattern-Matching	96
7.4	Variations on Pattern Matching	98
7.5	Inaccessible Terms	99
7.6	Match Expressions	100
7.7	Other Examples	101
7.8	Well-Founded Recursion	102
8	Building Theories and Proofs	103
8.1	More on Coercions	103
8.2	More on Implicit Arguments	107
8.3	Elaboration and Unification	109
8.4	Opaque Definitions	112
8.5	Reducible Definitions	113
8.6	Helping the Elaborator	115
8.7	Making Auxiliary Facts Visible	117
8.8	Sections	118

8.9	More on Namespaces	120
9	Type Classes	125
9.1	Type Classes and Instances	125
9.2	Chaining Instances	129
9.3	Decidable Propositions	130
9.4	Overloading with Type Classes	132
9.5	Managing Type Class Inference	134
9.6	Instances in Sections	135
9.7	Bounded Quantification	136
10	Structures and Records	139
10.1	Declaring Structures	139
10.2	Objects	141
10.3	Inheritance	143
10.4	Structures as Classes	145
11	Tactics	148
11.1	Entering the Tactic Mode	148
11.2	Basic Tactics	150
11.3	Managing Auxiliary Facts	153
11.4	Structuring Tactic Proofs	154
11.5	Cases and Pattern Matching	157
11.6	The Rewrite Tactic	159
11.7	Tactics as a Programming Language	164
12	Axioms	165
12.1	Computation and Axioms	165
12.2	Propositional Extensionality	167
12.3	Function Extensionality	167
12.4	Quotients	168
12.5	Excluded Middle	172
12.6	Choice Axioms	172
12.7	Propositional Decidability	174
12.8	Diaconescu's theorem	175
12.9	Constructive Choice	175
	Bibliography	178

Introduction

1.1 Computers and Theorem Proving

Formal verification involves the use of logical and computational methods to establish claims that are expressed in precise mathematical terms. These can include ordinary mathematical theorems, as well as claims that pieces of hardware or software, network protocols, and mechanical and hybrid systems meet their specifications. In practice, there is not a sharp distinction between verifying a piece of mathematics and verifying the correctness of a system: formal verification requires describing hardware and software systems in mathematical terms, at which point establishing claims as to their correctness becomes a form of theorem proving. Conversely, the proof of a mathematical theorem may require a lengthy computation, in which case verifying the truth of the theorem requires verifying that the computation does what it is supposed to do.

The gold standard for supporting a mathematical claim is to provide a proof, and twentieth-century developments in logic show most if not all conventional proof methods can be reduced to a small set of axioms and rules in any of a number of foundational systems. With this reduction, there are two ways that a computer can help establish a claim: it can help find a proof in the first place, and it can help verify that a purported proof is correct.

Automated theorem proving focuses on the “finding” aspect. Resolution theorem provers, tableau theorem provers, fast satisfiability solvers, and so on provide means of establishing the validity of formulas in propositional and first-order logic. Other systems provide search procedures and decision procedures for specific languages and domains, such as linear or nonlinear expressions over the integers or the real numbers. Architectures like SMT (“satisfiability modulo theories”) combine domain-general search methods

with domain-specific procedures. Computer algebra systems and specialized mathematical software packages provide means of carrying out mathematical computations, establishing mathematical bounds, or finding mathematical objects. A calculation can be viewed as a proof as well, and these systems, too, help establish mathematical claims.

Automated reasoning systems strive for power and efficiency, often at the expense of guaranteed soundness. Such systems can have bugs, and typically there is little more than the author's good intentions to guarantee that the results they deliver are correct. In contrast, *interactive theorem proving* focuses on the “verification” aspect of theorem proving, requiring that every claim is supported by a proof in a suitable axiomatic foundation. This sets a very high standard: every rule of inference and every step of a calculation has to be justified by appealing to prior definitions and theorems, all the way down to basic axioms and rules. In fact, most such systems provide fully elaborated “proof objects” that can be communicated to other systems and checked independently. Constructing such proofs typically requires much more input and interaction from users, but it allows us to obtain deeper and more complex proofs.

The *Lean Theorem Prover* aims to bridge the gap between interactive and automated theorem proving, by situating automated tools and methods in a framework that supports user interaction and the construction of fully specified axiomatic proofs. The goal is to support both mathematical reasoning and reasoning about complex systems, and to verify claims in both domains.

1.2 About Lean

The *Lean* project was launched by Leonardo de Moura at Microsoft Research Redmond in 2012. It is an ongoing, long-term effort, and much of the potential for automation will be realized only gradually over time. Lean is released under the Apache 2.0 license, a permissive open source license that permits others to use and extend the code and mathematical libraries freely.

There are currently two ways to use Lean. The first is to run it from the web: a Javascript version of Lean, a standard library of definitions and theorems, and an editor are actually downloaded to your browser and run there. This provides a quick and convenient way to begin experimenting with the system.

The second way to use Lean is to install and run it natively on your computer. The native version is much faster than the web version, and is more flexible in other ways, too. It comes with an Emacs mode that offers powerful support for writing and debugging proofs, and is much better suited for serious use.

1.3 About this Book

This book is designed to teach you to develop and verify proofs in Lean. There are many aspects to this, some of which are not specific to Lean at all. To start with, we will explain the logical system that underlies Lean’s standard library, a system known as the *Calculus of Inductive Constructions* [1, 4], or *CIC*. The CIC is a version of *dependent type theory* that is powerful enough to prove almost any conventional mathematical theorem, and expressive enough to do it in a natural way. We will explain not only how to define mathematical objects and express mathematical assertions in the CIC, but also how to use CIC as a language for writing proofs. (Lean also supports work in an axiomatic framework for **homotopy type theory**, which we will discuss in a later chapter.)

Because fully detailed axiomatic proofs are so complicated, the challenge of theorem proving is to have the computer fill in as many of the details as possible. We will describe various methods to support this in dependent type theory. For example, we will discuss term rewriting, and Lean’s automated methods for simplifying terms and expressions automatically. Similarly, we will discuss methods of *elaboration* and *type inference*, which can be used to support flexible forms of algebraic reasoning.

Finally, of course, we will discuss features that are specific to Lean, including the language with which you can communicate with the system, and the mechanisms Lean offers for managing complex theories and data.

If you are reading this book within Lean’s online tutorial system, you will see a copy of the Lean editor at right, with an output buffer beneath it. At any point, you can type things into the editor, press the “play” button, and see Lean’s response. Notice that you can resize the various windows if you would like.

Throughout the text you will find examples of Lean code like the one below:

```
theorem and_commutative (p q : Prop) : p ∧ q → q ∧ p :=
  assume Hpq : p ∧ q,
  have Hp : p, from and.elim_left Hpq,
  have Hq : q, from and.elim_right Hpq,
  show q ∧ p, from and.intro Hq Hp
```

Once again, if you are reading the book online, you will see a button that reads “try it yourself.” Pressing the button copies the example into the Lean editor with enough surrounding context to make the example compile correctly, and then runs Lean. We recommend running the examples and experimenting with the code on your own as you work through the chapters that follow.

Dependent Type Theory

Dependent type theory is a powerful and expressive language, allowing us to express complex mathematical assertions, write complex hardware and software specifications, and reason about both of these in a natural and uniform way. Lean is based on a version of dependent type theory known as the *Calculus of Inductive Constructions*, with a countable hierarchy of non-cumulative universes and inductive types. By the end of this chapter, you will understand much of what this means.

2.1 Simple Type Theory

As a foundation for mathematics, set theory has a simple ontology that is rather appealing. Everything is a set, including numbers, functions, triangles, stochastic processes, and Riemannian manifolds. It is a remarkable fact that one can construct a rich mathematical universe from a small number of axioms that describe a few basic set-theoretic constructions.

But for many purposes, including formal theorem proving, it is better to have an infrastructure that helps us manage and keep track of the various kinds of mathematical objects we are working with. “Type theory” gets its name from the fact that every expression has an associated *type*. For example, in a given context, $x + 0$ may denote a natural number and f may denote a function on the natural numbers.

Here are some examples of how we can declare objects in Lean and check their types.

```
import standard
open bool nat

/- declare some constants -/
```

```

constant m : nat          -- m is a natural number
constant n : nat
constants b1 b2 : bool    -- here we declare two constants at once

/- check their types -/

check m
check n
check 0
check n + 0
check m * (n + 0)
check b1
check b1 && b2 -- boolean and
check b1 || b2 -- boolean or
check tt      -- boolean "true"

```

The first command, `import standard`, tells Lean that we intend to use the standard library. The next command tells Lean that we will use constants, facts, and notations from the theory of the booleans and the theory of natural numbers. In technical terms, `bool` and `nat` are *namespaces*; you will learn more about them later. To shorten the examples, we will usually hide the relevant imports, when they have already been made explicit in a previous example.

The `/-` and `-/` annotations indicate that the next line is a comment block that is ignored by Lean. Similarly, two dashes indicate that the rest of the line contains a comment that is also ignored. Comment blocks can be nested, making it possible to “comment out” chunks of code, just as in many programming languages.

The `constant` and `constants` commands introduce new constant symbols into the working environment, and the `check` command asks Lean to report their types. You should test this, and try typing some examples of your own.

What makes simple type theory powerful is that one can build new types out of others. For example, if A and B are types, $A \rightarrow B$ denotes the type of functions from A to B , and $A \times B$ denotes the cartesian product, that is, the type of ordered pairs consisting of an element of A paired with an element of B .

```

open prod    -- notation for the product

constants m n : nat

constant f : nat → nat          -- type the arrow as "\to" or "\r"
constant f' : nat -> nat        -- alternative ASCII notation
constant p : nat × nat          -- type the product as "\times"
constant q : prod nat nat       -- alternative notation
constant g : nat → nat → nat
constant g' : nat → (nat → nat) -- has the same type as g!
constant h : nat × nat → nat

constant F : (nat → nat) → nat -- a "functional"

```

```

check f
check f n
check g m n
check g m
check pair m n
check pr1 p
check pr2 p
check pr1 (pair m n)
check pair (pr1 p) n
check F f

```

There are a couple of things to notice here. First, the application of a function `f` to a value `x` is denoted `f x`. Second, when writing type expressions, arrows associate to the *right*; for example, the type of `g` is `nat → (nat → nat)`. Thus we can view `g` as a function that takes natural numbers and returns another function that takes a natural number and returns a natural number. In type theory, this is generally more convenient than writing `g` as a function that takes a pair of natural numbers as input, and returns a natural number as output. For example, it allows us to “partially apply” the function `g`. The example above shows that `g m` has type `nat → nat`, that is, the function that “waits” for a second argument, `n`, and then returns `g m n`. Taking a function `h` of type `nat × nat → nat` and “redefining” it to look like `g` is a process known as *currying*, something we will come back to below.

By now you may also have guessed that, in Lean, `pair m n` denotes the ordered pair of `m` and `n`, and if `p` is a pair, `pr1 p` and `pr2 p` denote the two projections.

2.2 Types as Objects

One way in which Lean’s dependent type theory extends simple type theory is that types themselves – entities like `nat` and `bool` – are first-class citizens, which is to say that they themselves are objects of study. For that to be the case, each of them also has to have a type.

```

check nat
check bool
check nat → bool
check nat × bool
check nat → nat
check nat × nat → nat
check nat → nat → nat
check nat → (nat → nat)
check nat → nat → bool
check (nat → nat) → nat

```

We see that each one of the expressions above is an object of type `Type`. We can also declare new constants and constructors for types:

```

constants A B : Type
constant F : Type → Type
constant G : Type → Type → Type

check A
check F A
check F nat
check G A
check G A B
check G A nat

```

Indeed, we have already seen an example of a function of type $\text{Type} \rightarrow \text{Type} \rightarrow \text{Type}$, namely, the Cartesian product.

```

constants A B : Type

check prod
check prod A
check prod A B
check prod nat nat

```

Here is another example: given any type A , the type `list A` denotes the type of lists of elements of type A .

```

import data.list
open list

constant A : Type

check list
check list A
check list nat

```

We will see that the ability to treat type constructors as instances of ordinary mathematical functions is a powerful feature of dependent type theory.

For those more comfortable with set-theoretic foundations, it may be helpful to think of a type as nothing more than a set, in which case, the elements of the type are just the elements of the set. But there is a circularity lurking nearby. `Type` itself is an expression like `nat`; if `nat` has a type, shouldn't `Type` have a type as well?

```

check Type

```

Lean's output seems to indicate that `Type` is an element of itself. But this is misleading. Russell's paradox shows that it is inconsistent with the other axioms of set theory to assume the existence of a set of all sets, and one can derive a similar paradox in dependent type theory. So, is Lean inconsistent?

What is going on is that Lean’s foundational fragment actually has a hierarchy of types, `Type.{1} : Type.{2} : Type.{3} : ...`. Think of `Type.{1}` as a universe of “small” or “ordinary” types. `Type.{2}` is then a larger universe of types, which contains `Type.{1}` as an element. When we declare a constant `A : Type`, Lean implicitly creates a variable `1`, and declares `A : Type.{1}`. In other words, `A` is a type in some unspecified universe. Lean silently keeps track of implicit universe levels, but you can ask Lean’s pretty printer to make this information explicit. You can even specify universe levels explicitly.

```

constants A B : Type
check A
check B
check Type
check Type → Type

set_option pp.universes true    -- display universe information

check A
check B
check Type
check Type → Type

universe variable u
constant C : Type.{u}
check C
check A → C
check Type → C

```

In ordinary situations, however, you can ignore the universe parameters and simply write `Type`. For most purposes, it suffices to leave the “universe management” to Lean.

2.3 Function Abstraction and Evaluation

We have seen that if we have `m n : nat`, then we have `pair m n : nat × nat`. This gives us a way of creating pairs of natural numbers. Conversely, if we have `p : nat × nat`, then we have `pr1 p : nat` and `pr2 p : nat`. This gives us a way of “using” a pair, by extracting its two components.

We already know how to “use” a function `f : A → B`: given `a : A`, we have `f a : B`. But how do we create a function from another expression?

The companion to application is a process known as “abstraction,” or “lambda abstraction.” Suppose that by temporarily postulating a variable `x : A` we can construct an expression `t : B`. Then the expression `fun x : A, t`, or, equivalently, `λx : A, t`, is an object of type `A → B`. Think of this as the function from `A` to `B` which maps any value `x` to the value `t`, which depends on `x`. For example, in mathematics it is common to say “let `f` be the function which maps any natural number `x` to `x + 5`.” The expression `λx : nat, x + 5` is just a symbolic representation of the right-hand side of this assignment.

```
import data.nat data.bool
open nat bool

check fun x : nat, x + 5
check λx : nat, x + 5
```

Here are some more abstract examples:

```
constants A B : Type
constants a1 a2 : A
constants b1 b2 : B

constant f : A → A
constant g : A → B
constant h : A → B → A
constant p : A → A → bool

check fun x : A, f x
check λx : A, f x
check λx : A, f (f x)
check λx : A, h x b1
check λy : B, h a1 y
check λx : A, p (f (f x)) (h (f a1) b2)
check λx : A, λy : B, h (f x) y
check λ(x : A) (y : B), h (f x) y
check λx y, h (f x) y
```

Lean interprets the final three examples as the same expression; in the last expression, Lean infers the type of `x` and `y` from the types of `f` and `h`.

Be sure to try writing some expressions of your own. Some mathematically common examples of operations of functions can be described in terms of lambda abstraction:

```
constants A B C : Type
constant f : A → B
constant g : B → C
constant b : B

check λx : A, x           -- the identity function on A
check λx : A, b           -- a constant function on A
check λx : A, g (f x)     -- the composition of g and f
check λx, g (f x)         -- (Lean can figure out the type of x)

-- we can abstract any of the constants in the previous definitions

check λb : B, λx : A, x
check λ(b : B) (x : A), x  -- equivalent to the previous line
check λ(g : B → C) (f : A → B) (x : A), g (f x)

-- we can even abstract over the type

check λ(A B : Type) (b : B) (x : A), x
check λ(A B C : Type) (g : B → C) (f : A → B) (x : A), g (f x)
```

Think about what these expressions mean. The last, for example, denotes the function that takes three types, A , B , and C , and two functions, $g : B \rightarrow C$ and $f : A \rightarrow C$, and returns the composition of g and f . Within a lambda expression $\lambda x : A, t$, the variable x is a “bound variable”: it is really a placeholder, whose “scope” does not extend beyond t . For example, the variable b in the expression $\lambda(b : B) (x : A), x$ has nothing to do with the constant b declared earlier. In fact, the expression denotes the same function as $\lambda(u : B) (z : A), z$. Formally, the expressions that are the same up to a renaming of bound variables are called *alpha equivalent*, and are considered morally “the same”. Lean recognizes this equivalence.

Notice that applying a term $t : A \rightarrow B$ to a term $s : A$ yields an expression $t s : B$. Returning to the previous example and renaming bound variables for clarity, notice the types of the following expressions:

```

constants A B C : Type
constant f : A → B
constant g : B → C
constant h : A → A
constants (a : A) (b : B)

check (λx : A, x) a
check (λx : A, b) a
check (λx : A, b) (h a)
check (λx : A, g (f x)) (h (h a))

check (λv u x, v (u x)) g f a

check (λ(Q R S : Type) (v : R → S) (u : Q → R) (x : Q), v (u x)) A B C g f a

```

As expected, the expression $(\lambda x : A, x) a$ has type A . In fact, more should be true: applying the expression $(\lambda x : A, x)$ to a should “return” the value a . And, indeed, it does:

```

constants A B C : Type
constant f : A → B
constant g : B → C
constant h : A → A
constants (a : A) (b : B)

eval (λx : A, x) a
eval (λx : A, b) a
eval (λx : A, b) (h a)
eval (λx : A, g (f x)) (h (h a))

eval (λv u x, v (u x)) g f a

eval (λ(Q R S : Type) (v : R → S) (u : Q → R) (x : Q), v (u x)) A B C g f a

```

The command `eval` tells Lean to *evaluate* an expression. The process of simplifying an expression $(\lambda x, t)s$ to $t[s/x]$ – that is, t with s substituted for the variable x – is

known as *beta reduction*, and two terms that beta reduce to a common term are called *beta equivalent*. But the `eval` command carries out other forms of reduction as well:

```
import data.nat data.prod data.bool
open nat prod bool

constants m n : nat
constant b : bool

print "reducing pairs"
eval pr1 (pair m n)
eval pr2 (pair m n)

print "reducing boolean expressions"
eval tt && ff
eval b && ff

print "reducing arithmetic expressions"
eval n + 0
eval n + 2
eval 2 + 3
```

In a later chapter, we will explain how these terms are evaluated. For now, we only wish to emphasize that this is an important feature of the Calculus of Inductive Constructions: every term has a computational behavior, and supports a notion of reduction, or *normalization*. In principle, two terms that reduce to the same value are considered morally “the same” by the underlying logical framework, and Lean does its best to recognize and support these identifications.

2.4 Introducing Definitions

Declaring constants in the Lean environment is a good way to postulate new objects to experiment with, but most of the time what we really want to do is *define* new objects in Lean, and prove things about them. The `definition` command provides the means to do so:

```
constants A B C : Type
constants (a : A) (f : A → B) (g : B → C) (h : A → A)

definition gfa : C := g (f a)

check gfa
print definition gfa

-- We can omit the type when Lean can figure it out.
definition gfa' := g (f a)

print definition gfa'
```

```

definition gfha := g (f (h a))

print definition gfha

definition g_comp_f : A → C := λx, g (f x)

print definition g_comp_f

```

The general form of a definition is `definition foo : T := bar`. Lean can usually infer the type `T`, but it is often a good idea to write it explicitly. This clarifies your intention, and Lean will flag an error if the right-hand side of the definition does not have the right type.

Because function definitions are so common, Lean provides an alternative notation, which puts the abstracted variables before the colon and omits the lambda:

```

definition g_comp_f (x : A) : C := g (f x)

print definition g_comp_f

```

Here are some more examples of definitions, this time in the context of arithmetic:

```

import data.nat
open nat

constants (m n : nat) (p q : bool)

definition m_plus_n : nat := m + n

check m_plus_n
print definition m_plus_n

-- Again, Lean can infer the type
definition m_plus_n' := m + n

print definition m_plus_n'

definition double (x : nat) : nat := x + x

print definition double
check double m
check double 3
eval double m
eval double 3

definition square (x : nat) := x * x

print definition square
eval square m
eval square 3

definition do_twice (f : nat → nat) (x : nat) : nat := f (f x)

```

```
eval do_twice double 2
```

As an exercise, we encourage you to use `do_twice` and `double` to define functions that quadruple their input, and multiply the input by 8. As a further exercise, we encourage you to try defining a function `Do_Twice : ((nat → nat) → (nat → nat)) → (nat → nat) → (nat → nat)` which iterates *its* argument twice, so that `Do_Twice do_twice` a function which iterates *its* input four times, and evaluate `Do_Twice do_twice double 2`.

Above, we discussed the process of “currying” a function, that is, taking a function `f (a, b)` that takes an ordered pair as an argument, and recasting it as a function `f' a b` which takes two arguments successively. As another exercise, we encourage you to complete the following definitions, which “curry” and “uncurry” a function.

```
import data.prod
open prod

definition curry (A B C : Type) (f : A × B → C) : A → B → C := sorry

definition uncurry (A B C : Type) (f : A → B → C) : A × B → C := sorry
```

2.5 Local definitions

Lean also allows you to introduce “local” definitions using the `let` construct. The expression `let a := t1 in t2` is definitionally equal to the result of replacing every occurrence of `a` in `t2` by `t1`.

```
import data.nat
open nat

section
  variable x : ℕ
  check let y := x + x in y * y
end

definition t (x : ℕ) : ℕ :=
let y := x + x in y * y
```

Here, `t` is definitionally equal to the term `(x + x) * (x + x)`. You can combine multiple assignments in a single `let` statement:

```
section
  variable x : ℕ
  check let y := x + x, z := y + y in z * z
end
```

Notice that the meaning of the expression `let a := t1 in t2` is very similar to the meaning of $(\lambda a, t2) t1$, but the two are not the same. In the first expression, you should think of every instance of `a` in `t2` as a syntactic abbreviation for `t1`. In the second expression, `a` is a variable, and the expression $\lambda a, t2$ has to make sense independent of the value of `a`. The `let` construct is a stronger means of abbreviation, and there are expressions of the form `let a := t1 in t2` that cannot be expressed as $(\lambda a, t2) t1$. As an exercise, try to understand why the definition of `foo` below type checks, but the definition of `bar` does not.

```
import data.nat
open nat

definition foo := let a := nat in λx : a, x + 2

/-
definition bar := (λa, λx : a, x + 2) nat
-/

---



```

2.6 Namespaces and Sections

This is a good place to introduce some organizational features of Lean that are not a part of the axiomatic framework *per se*, but make it possible to work in the framework more efficiently.

Lean provides us with the ability to group definitions, notations, and other information into nested, hierarchical *namespaces*:

```
namespace foo
  constant A : Type
  constant a : A
  constant f : A → A

  definition fa : A := f a
  definition ffa : A := f (f a)

  print "inside foo"

  check A
  check a
  check f
  check fa
  check ffa
  check foo.A
  check foo.fa
end foo

print "outside the namespace"

-- check A -- error
-- check fa -- error
```

```

check foo.A
check foo.a
check foo.f
check foo.fa
check foo.ffa

open foo

print "opened foo"

check A
check a
check fa
check foo.fa

```

When we declare that we are working in the namespace `foo`, every identifier we declare has a full name with prefix “`foo.`” Within the namespace, we can refer to identifiers by their shorter names, but once we end the namespace, we have to use the longer names.

The `open` command brings the shorter names into the current context. Often, when we `import` a module, we will want to open one or more of the namespaces it contains, to have access to the short identifiers, notations, and so on. But sometimes we will want to leave this information hidden, for example, when they conflict with identifiers and notations in another namespace we want to use. Thus namespaces give us a way to manage our working environment.

For example, when we work with the natural numbers, we usually want access to the function `add`, and its associated notation, `+`. The command `open nat` makes these available to us.

```

import data.nat  -- imports the nat module

check nat.add
check nat.zero

open nat -- imports short identifiers, notations, etc. into the context

check add
check zero

constants m n : nat

check m + n
check 0
check m + 0

```

Namespaces can be nested:

```

namespace foo
  constant A : Type
  constant a : A

```

```

constant f : A → A

definition fa : A := f a

namespace bar
  definition ffa : A := f (f a)

  check fa
  check ffa
end bar

check fa
check bar.ffa
end foo

check foo.fa
check foo.bar.ffa

open foo

check fa
check bar.ffa

```

Namespaces that have been closed can later be reopened (even in another “module,” that is, another file):

```

namespace foo
  constant A : Type
  constant a : A
  constant f : A → A

  definition fa : A := f a
end foo

check foo.A
check foo.f

namespace foo
  definition ffa : A := f (f a)
end foo

```

The notion of a *section* provides another way of managing information. When we develop a theory, we will often reuse variables in successive definitions:

```

definition compose (A B C : Type) (g : B → C) (f : A → B) (x : A) :
  C := g (f x)

definition do_twice (A : Type) (h : A → A) (x : A) : A := h (h x)

definition do_thrice (A : Type) (h : A → A) (x : A) : A := h (h (h x))

check compose
check do_twice
check do_thrice

```

With a section, you can declare the variables once and for all:

```

section useful
  variables (A B C : Type)
  variables (g : B → C) (f : A → B) (h : A → A)
  variable x : A

  definition compose := g (f x)
  definition do_twice := h (h x)
  definition do_thrice := h (h (h x))

  check compose
  check do_twice
  check do_thrice
end useful

print definition compose
print definition do_twice
print definition do_thrice

```

The `variable` and `variables` commands look like the `constant` and `constants` commands we used above, but there is an important difference: rather than creating permanent entities, the declarations tell the Lean to insert the variables as bound variables in definitions that refer to them. Lean is smart enough to figure out which variables are used explicitly or implicitly in a definition, so the later definitions of `compose`, `do_twice`, and `do_thrice` have exactly the same effect as the earlier ones. When the section is closed, the variables go out of scope, and become nothing more than a distant memory.

You do not have to name a section, which is to say, you can use an anonymous `section` / `end` pair. But if you do name a section, you have to close it using the same name.

Like namespaces, nested sections have to be closed in the order they are opened. Also, a namespace cannot be opened within a section; namespaces have to live on the outer levels.

Namespaces and sections serve different purposes: namespaces organize data and sections declare variables for insertion in theorems. A namespace can be viewed as a special kind of section, however. In particular, you can use the `variable` command in a namespace, in which case the variables you declare remain in scope until the namespace is closed.

If you use the `open` command at the “top level” of a file to import information from a namespace, that information remains in the context until the end of the file. But if you use the `open` command within a namespace, the information remains in the context until that namespace is closed.

2.7 Dependent Types

You now have rudimentary ways of defining functions and objects in Lean, and we will gradually introduce you to many more. Our ultimate goal in Lean is to *prove* things about

the objects we define, and the next chapter will introduce you to Lean’s mechanisms for stating theorems and constructing proofs. Meanwhile, let us remain on the topic of defining objects in dependent type theory for just a moment longer, in order to explain what makes dependent type theory *dependent*, and why that is useful.

The short answer is that what makes dependent type theory dependent is that types can depend on parameters. You have already seen a nice example of this: the type `list A` depends on the argument `A`, and this dependence is what distinguishes `list nat` and `list bool`. For another example, consider the type `vec A n`, the type of vectors of elements of `A` of length `n`. This type depends on *two* parameters: the type `A : Type` of the elements in the vector and the length `n : nat`.

Suppose we wish to write a function `cons` which inserts a new element at the head of a list. What type should `cons` have? Such a function is *polymorphic*: we expect the `cons` function for `nat`, `bool`, or an arbitrary type `A` to behave the same way. So it makes sense to take the type to be the first argument to `cons`, so that for any type, `A`, `cons A` is the insertion function for lists of type `A`. In other words, for every `A`, `cons A` is the function that takes an element `a : A` and a list `l : list A`, and returns a new list, so we have `cons a l : list A`.

It is clear that `cons A` should have type `A → list A → list A`. But what type should `cons` have? A first guess might be `Type → A → list A → list A`, but, on reflection, this does not make sense: the `A` in this expression does not refer to anything, whereas it should refer to the argument of type `Type`. In other words, *assuming* `A : Type` is the first argument to the function, the type of the next two elements are `A` and `list A`. These types vary depending on the first argument, `A`.

This is an instance of a *Pi type* in dependent type theory. Given `A : Type` and `B : A → Type`, think of `B` as a family of types over `A`, that is, a type `B a` for each `a : A`. In that case, the type `Π x : A, B x` denotes the type of functions `f` with the property that, for each `a : A`, `f a` is an element of `B a`. In other words, the type of the value returned by `f` depends on its input.

Notice that `Π x : A, B` makes sense for any expression `B : Type`. When the value of `B` depends on `x`, `Π x : A, B` denotes a dependent function type, as above. When `B` doesn’t depend on `x`, `Π x : A, B` is no different from the type `A → B`. Indeed, in dependent type theory (and in Lean), the `Pi` construction is fundamental, and `A → B` is nothing more than notation for `Π x : A, B` when `B` does not depend on `A`.

Returning to the example of lists, we can model some basic list operations as follows. We use `namespace hide` to avoid a conflict with the `list` type defined in the standard library.

```
namespace hide
constant list : Type → Type

namespace list
constant cons : Π A : Type, A → list A → list A -- type the product as "\Pi"
```

```

constant nil :  $\Pi A : \text{Type}, \text{list } A$           -- the empty list
constant head :  $\Pi A : \text{Type}, \text{list } A \rightarrow A$     -- returns the first element
constant tail :  $\Pi A : \text{Type}, \text{list } A \rightarrow \text{list } A$  -- returns the remainder
constant append :  $\Pi A : \text{Type}, \text{list } A \rightarrow \text{list } A \rightarrow \text{list } A$  -- concatenates two lists
end list
end hide

```

In fact, these are essentially the types of the defined objects in the list library (we will explain the `@` symbol and the difference between the round and curly brackets momentarily).

```

import data.list
open list

check list

check @cons
check @nil
check @head
check @tail
check @append

```

There is a small subtlety in the definition of `head`: when passed the empty list, the function must determine a default element of the relevant type. We will explain how this is done in Chapter 9.

Vector operations are handled similarly:

```

import data.nat
open nat

constant vec :  $\text{Type} \rightarrow \text{nat} \rightarrow \text{Type}$ 

namespace vec
  constant empty :  $\Pi A : \text{Type}, \text{vec } A \ 0$ 
  constant cons :  $\Pi (A : \text{Type}) (n : \text{nat}), A \rightarrow \text{vec } A \ n \rightarrow \text{vec } A \ (n + 1)$ 
  constant append :  $\Pi (A : \text{Type}) (n \ m : \text{nat}), \text{vec } A \ m \rightarrow \text{vec } A \ n \rightarrow \text{vec } A \ (n + m)$ 
end vec

```

In the coming chapters, you will come across many instances of dependent types. Here we will mention just one more important and illustrative example, the *Sigma types*, $\Sigma x : A, B \ x$, sometimes also known as *dependent pairs*. These are, in a sense, companions to the Pi types. The type $\Sigma x : A, B \ x$ denotes the type of pairs `sigma.mk a b` where `a : A` and `b : B a`. You can also use angle brackets `<a, b>` as notation for `sigma a b`. (To type these brackets, use the shortcuts `\<` and `\>`.) Just as Pi types $\Pi x : A, B \ x$ generalize the notion of a function type $A \rightarrow B$, Sigma types $\Sigma x : A, B \ x$ generalize the cartesian product $A \times B$: in the expression `sigma.mk a b`, the type of the second element of the pair, `b : B a`, depends on the first element of the pair, `a : A`.

```

import data.sigma
open sigma

constant A : Type
constant B : A → Type
constant a : A
constant b : B a

check sigma.mk a b
check ⟨a, b⟩
check pr1 ⟨a, b⟩
check pr2 ⟨a, b⟩

eval pr1 ⟨a, b⟩
eval pr2 ⟨a, b⟩

```

Note, by the way, that the identifiers `pr1` and `pr2` are also used for the cartesian product type. The notations are made available when you open the namespaces `prod` and `sigma` respectively; if you open both, the identifier is simply overloaded. Without opening the namespaces, you can refer to them as `prod.pr1`, `prod.pr2`, `sigma.pr1`, and `sigma.pr2`.

Moreover, if you open the namespaces `prod.ops` and `sigma.ops`, you can use additional convenient notation for the projections:

```

import data.sigma data.prod

constant A : Type
constant B : A → Type
constant a : A
constant b : B a
constants C D : Type
constants (c : C) (d : D)

open sigma.ops
open prod.ops

eval ⟨a, b⟩.1
eval ⟨a, b⟩.2
eval ⟨c, d⟩.1
eval ⟨c, d⟩.2

```

2.8 Implicit Arguments

Suppose we have an implementation of lists as described above.

```

namespace hide
constant list : Type → Type

namespace list
  constant cons : ΠA : Type, A → list A → list A

```

```

constant nil :  $\Pi A : \text{Type}, \text{list } A$ 
constant append :  $\Pi A : \text{Type}, \text{list } A \rightarrow \text{list } A \rightarrow \text{list } A$ 
end list
end hide

```

Then, given a type A , some elements of A , and some lists of elements of A , we can construct new lists using the constructors.

```

open hide.list

constant A : Type
constant a : A
constants l1 l2 : list A

check cons A a (nil A)
check append A (cons A a (nil A)) l1
check append A (append A (cons A a (nil A)) l1) l2

```

Because the constructors are polymorphic over types, we have to insert the type A as an argument repeatedly. But this information is redundant: one can infer the argument A in `cons A a (nil A)` from the fact that the second argument, `a`, has type A . One can similarly infer the argument in `nil A`, not from anything else in that expression, but from the fact that it is sent as an argument to the function `cons`, which expects an element of type `list A` in that position.

This is a central feature of dependent type theory: terms carry a lot of information, and often some of that information can be inferred from the context. In Lean, one uses an underscore, `_`, to specify that the system should fill in the information automatically. This is known as an “implicit argument”.

```

check cons _ a (nil _)
check append _ (cons _ a (nil _)) l1
check append _ (append _ (cons _ a (nil _)) l1) l2

```

It is still tedious, however, to type all these underscores. When a function takes an argument that can generally be inferred from context, Lean allows us to specify that this argument should, by default, be left implicit.

```

namespace list
  constant cons :  $\Pi \{A : \text{Type}\}, A \rightarrow \text{list } A \rightarrow \text{list } A$ 
  constant nil :  $\Pi \{A : \text{Type}\}, \text{list } A$ 
  constant append :  $\Pi \{A : \text{Type}\}, \text{list } A \rightarrow \text{list } A \rightarrow \text{list } A$ 
end list

open hide.list

constant A : Type

```

```

constant a : A
constants l1 l2 : list A

check cons a nil
check append (cons a nil) l1
check append (append (cons a nil) l1) l2

```

All that has changed are the curly braces around `A : Type` in the declaration of the constants. We can also use this device in function definitions:

```

-- the polymorphic identity function
definition id {A : Type} (x : A) := x

constants A B : Type
constants (a : A) (b : B)

check id
check id a
check id b

```

This makes the first argument to `id` implicit. Notationally, this hides the specification of the type, making it look as though `id` simply takes an argument of any type.

Implicit arguments can also be declared as section variables:

```

section
  variable {A : Type}
  variable x : A
  definition id := x
end

constants A B : Type
constants (a : A) (b : B)

check id
check id a
check id b

```

This definition of `id` has the same effect as the one above.

Lean has very complex mechanisms for instantiating implicit arguments, and we will see that they can be used to infer function types, predicates, and even proofs. The process of instantiating “holes” in a term is often known as *elaboration*. As this tutorial progresses, we will gradually learn more of what Lean’s powerful elaborator can do.

Sometimes, however, we may find ourselves in a situation where we have declared an argument to a function to be implicit, but now want to provide the argument explicitly. If `foo` is such a function, the notation `@foo` denotes the same function with all the arguments made explicit.

```
check @id
check @id A
check @id B
check @id A a
check @id B b
```

Below we will see that Lean has another useful annotation, `!`, which, in a sense, does the opposite of `@`. This is most useful in the context of theorem proving, which we will turn to next.

Propositions and Proofs

By now, you have seen how to define some elementary notions in dependent type theory. You have also seen that it is possible to import notions that are defined in Lean’s library. In this chapter, we will explain how mathematical propositions and proofs are expressed in the language of dependent type theory, so that you can start proving assertions about the objects and notations that have been defined. The encoding we use here is specific to the standard library; we will discuss proofs in *homotopy type theory* in a later chapter.

3.1 Propositions as Types

One strategy for proving assertions about objects defined in the language of dependent type theory is to layer an assertion language and a proof language on top of the definition language. But there is no reason to multiply languages in this way: dependent type theory is flexible and expressive, and there is no reason we cannot represent assertions and proofs in the same general framework.

For example, we could introduce a new type, `Prop`, to represent propositions, and constructors to build new propositions from others.

```
constant and : Prop → Prop → Prop
constant or  : Prop → Prop → Prop
constant not : Prop → Prop
constant implies : Prop → Prop → Prop

section
  variables p q r : Prop
  check and p q
  check or (and p q) r
```

```

    check implies (and p q) (and q p)
end

```

We could then introduce, for each element $p : \text{Prop}$, another type $\text{Proof } p$, for the type of proofs of p . An “axiom” would be constant of such a type.

```

constant Proof : Prop → Type

constant and_comm :  $\prod p q : \text{Prop}$ , Proof (implies (and p q) (and q p))

section
  variables p q : Prop
  check and_comm p q
end

```

In addition to axioms, however, we would also need rules to build new proofs from old ones. For example, in many proof systems for propositional logic, we have the rule of modus ponens:

From a proof of $\text{implies } p \ q$ and a proof of p , we obtain a proof of q .

We could represent this as follows:

```

constant modus_ponens (p q : Prop) : Proof (implies p q) → Proof p → Proof q

```

Systems of natural deduction for propositional logic also typically rely on the following rule:

Suppose that, assuming p as a hypothesis, we have a proof of q . Then we can “cancel” the hypothesis and obtain a proof of $\text{implies } p \ q$.

We could render this as follows:

```

constant implies_intro (p q : Prop) : (Proof p → Proof q) → Proof (implies p q).

```

This approach would provide us with a reasonable way of building assertions and proofs. Determining that an expression t is a correct proof of assertion p would then simply be a matter of checking that t has type $\text{Proof } p$.

Some simplifications are possible, however. To start with, we can avoid writing the term Proof repeatedly by conflating $\text{Proof } p$ with p itself. In other, whenever we have $p : \text{Prop}$, we can interpret p as a type, namely, the type of its proofs. We can then read $t : p$ as the assertion that t is a proof of p .

Moreover, once we make this identification, the rules for implication show that we can pass back and forth between $\text{implies } p \ q$ and $p \rightarrow q$. In other words, implication between

propositions p and q corresponds to having a function that takes any element of p to an element of q . As a result, the introduction of the connective `implies` is entirely redundant: we can use the usual function space constructor $p \rightarrow q$ from dependent type theory as our notion of implication.

This is the approach followed in the Calculus of Inductive Constructions, and hence in Lean as well. The fact that the rules for implication in a proof system for natural deduction correspond exactly to the rules governing abstraction and application for functions is an instance of the *Curry-Howard isomorphism*, sometimes known as the *propositions-as-types* paradigm. In fact, the type `Prop` is syntactic sugar for `Type.{0}`, the very bottom of the type hierarchy described in the last chapter. `Prop` has some special features, but like the other type universes, it is closed under the arrow constructor: if we have $p \ q : \text{Prop}$, then $p \rightarrow q : \text{Prop}$.

There are a number of ways of thinking about propositions as types. To some who take a constructive view of logic and mathematics, this is a faithful rendering of what it means to be a proposition: a proposition p represents a sort of data type, namely, a specification of the type of data that constitutes a proof. A proof of p is then simply an object $t : p$ of the right type.

Those not inclined to this ideology can view it, rather, as a simple coding trick. To each proposition p we associate a type, which is either empty if p is false, and has a single element, say $*$, if p is true. In the latter case, let us say that (the type associated with) p is *inhabited*. It just so happens that the rules for function application and abstraction can conveniently help us keep track of which elements of `Prop` are inhabited. So constructing an element $t : p$ tells us that p is indeed true. You can think of the inhabitant of p as being the “fact that p is true.” A proof of $p \rightarrow q$ uses “the fact that p is true” to obtain “the fact that q is true.”

Indeed, if $p : \text{Prop}$ is any proposition, Lean’s *standard kernel* treats any two elements $t1 \ t2 : p$ as being “definitionally equal,” much the same way as it treats $(\lambda x, t)s$ and $t[s/x]$ as definitionally equal. This is known as “proof irrelevance,” and is consistent with the interpretation in the last paragraph. It means that even though we can treat proofs $t : p$ as ordinary objects in the language of dependent type theory, they carry no information beyond the fact that p is true.

Lean also supports an alternative *proof relevant kernel*, which forms the basis for *homotopy type theory*. We will return to this topic in a later chapter.

3.2 Working with Propositions as Types

In the propositions-as-types paradigm, theorems involving only \rightarrow can be proved using only lambda abstraction and application. In Lean, the `theorem` command introduces a new theorem:

```

constants p q : Prop

theorem t1 : p → q → p := λHp : p, λHq : q, Hp

```

This looks exactly like the definition of the constant function in the last chapter, the only difference being that the arguments are elements of `Prop` rather than `Type`. Intuitively, our proof of $p \rightarrow q \rightarrow p$ assumes p and q are true, and uses the first hypothesis (trivially) to establish that the conclusion, p , is true.

Note that the `theorem` command is really a version of the `definition` command: under the propositions and types correspondence, proving the theorem $p \rightarrow q \rightarrow p$ is really the same as defining an element of the associated type. The only difference is that a `theorem` is always treated as an *opaque* definition, and Lean never tries to “unfold” the definition and “see” the proof. The point is that later definitions and theorems should not care what the proof is; by the assumption of proof irrelevance, they are all treated the same. In Lean, we can also mark a definition opaque, by introducing it as an `opaque definition`. There is only one small difference: in Lean, opaque definitions are treated as transparent in the module where they are defined. See Section 8.4 for further discussion.

Notice that the lambda abstractions $H_p : p$ and $H_q : q$ can be viewed as temporary assumptions in the proof of `t1`. Lean provides the alternative syntax `assume` for such a lambda abstraction:

```

theorem t1 : p → q → p :=
assume Hp : p,
assume Hq : q,
Hp

```

Lean also allows us to specify the type of the final term `Hp`, explicitly, with a `show` statement.

```

theorem t1 : p → q → p :=
assume Hp : p,
assume Hq : q,
show p, from Hp

```

Adding such extra information can improve the clarity of a proof and help detect errors when writing a proof. The `show` command does nothing more than annotate the type, and, internally, all the presentations of `t1` that we have seen produce the same term. Lean also allows you to use the alternative syntax `lemma` and `corollary` instead of `theorem`:

```

lemma t1 : p → q → p :=
assume Hp : p,
assume Hq : q,
show p, from Hp

```

As with ordinary definitions, one can move the lambda-abstracted variables to the left of the colon:

```
theorem t1 (Hp : p) (Hq : q) : p := Hp
check t1
```

Now we can apply the theorem `t1` just as a function application.

```
axiom Hp : p

theorem t2 : q → p := t1 Hp
check t2
```

Here, the `axiom` command is alternative syntax for `constant`. Declaring a “constant” `Hp : p` is tantamount to declaring that `p` is true, as witnessed by `Hp`. Applying the theorem `t1 : p → q → p` to the fact `Hp : p` that `p` is true yields the theorem `t2 : q → p`.

Notice, by the way, that the original theorem `t1` is true for *any* propositions `p` and `q`, not just the particular constants declared. So it would be more natural to define the theorem so that it quantifies over those, too:

```
theorem t1 (p q : Prop) (Hp : p) (Hq : q) : p := Hp
check t1
```

The type of `t1` is now $\Pi p\ q : \text{Prop}, p \rightarrow q \rightarrow p$. We can read this as the assertion “for every pair of propositions `p q`, we have $p \rightarrow q \rightarrow p$ ”. Later we will see how `Pi` types let us model universal quantifiers more generally. For the moment, however, we will focus on theorems in propositional logic, generalized over the propositions. We will tend to work in sections with variables over the propositions, so that they are generalized for us automatically.

When we generalize `t1` in that way, we can then apply it to different pairs of propositions, to obtain different instances of the general theorem.

```
section
  theorem t1 (p q : Prop) (Hp : p) (Hq : q) : p := Hp

  variables p q r s : Prop

  check t1 p q
  check t1 r s
  check t1 (r → s) (s → r)

  variable H : r → s
  check t1 (r → s) (s → r) H
end
```

Remember that under the propositions-as-types correspondence, a variable H of type $r \rightarrow s$ can be viewed as the hypothesis that $r \rightarrow s$ holds.

As another example, let us consider the composition function discussed in the last chapter, now with propositions instead of types.

```
section
  variables p q r s : Prop

  theorem t2 (H1 : q → r) (H2 : p → q) : p → r :=
  assume H3 : p,
  show r, from H1 (H2 H3)
end
```

As a theorem of propositional logic, what does `t2` say?

Lean allows the alternative syntax `premise` and `premises` for `variable` and `variables`. This makes sense, of course, for variables whose type is an element of `Prop`. The following definition of `t2` has the same net effect as the preceding one.

```
section
  variables p q r s : Prop
  premises (H1 : q → r) (H2 : p → q)

  theorem t2 : p → r :=
  assume H3 : p,
  show r, from H1 (H2 H3)
end
```

3.3 Propositional Logic

Lean defines all the standard logical connectives and notation. The propositional connectives come with the following notation:

Ascii	Unicode	Emacs shortcut for unicode	Definition
true			true
false			false
not	¬	\not, \neg	not
/\	∧	\and	and
\	∨	\or	or
->	→	\to, \r, \implies	
<->	↔	\iff, \lr	iff

They all take values in `Prop`.

```

constants p q : Prop

check p → q → p ∧ q
check ¬p → p ↔ false
check p ∨ q → q ∨ p

```

The order of operations is fairly standard: unary negation \neg binds most strongly, then \wedge and \vee , and finally \rightarrow and \leftrightarrow . For example, $a \wedge b \rightarrow c \vee d \wedge e$ means $(a \wedge b) \rightarrow (c \vee (d \wedge e))$. Remember that \rightarrow associates to the right (nothing changes now that the arguments are elements of `Prop`, instead of some other `Type`), as do the other binary connectives. So if we have $p \ q \ r : \text{Prop}$, $p \rightarrow q \rightarrow r$ reads “if p , then if q , then r .” This is just the “curried” form of $p \wedge q \rightarrow r$.

In the last chapter we observed that lambda abstraction can be viewed as an “introduction rule” for \rightarrow . In the current setting, it shows how to “introduce” or establish an implication. Application can be viewed as an “elimination rule,” showing how to “eliminate” or use an implication in a proof. The other propositional connectives are defined in the standard library in the module `init.datatypes`, and each comes with its canonical introduction and elimination rules.

Conjunction

The expression `and.intro H1 H2` creates a proof for $p \wedge q$ using proofs $H1 : p$ and $H2 : q$. It is common to describe `and.intro` as the *and-introduction* rule. In the next example we use `and.intro` to create a proof of $p \rightarrow q \rightarrow p \wedge q$.

```

section
  variables p q : Prop
  example (Hp : p) (Hq : q) : p ∧ q := and.intro Hp Hq

  check assume (Hp : p) (Hq : q), and.intro Hp Hq
end

```

The `example` command states a theorem without naming it or storing it in the permanent context. Essentially, it just checks that the given term has the indicated type. It is convenient for illustration, and we will use it often.

The expression `and.elim_left H` creates a proof of p from a proof $H : p \wedge q$. Similarly, `and.elim_right H` is a proof of q . They are commonly known as the right and left *and-elimination* rules.

```

section
  variables p q : Prop
  -- Proof of p ∧ q → p
  example (H : p ∧ q) : p := and.elim_left H
  -- Proof of p ∧ q → q

```

```
example (H : p ∧ q) : q := and.elim_right H
end
```

We can now prove $p \wedge q \rightarrow q \wedge p$ with the following proof term.

```
section
variables p q : Prop

example (H : p ∧ q) : q ∧ p :=
and.intro (and.elim_right H) (and.elim_left H)
end
```

Because they are so commonly use, the standard library provides the abbreviations `and.left` and `and.right` for `and.elim_left` and `and.elim_right`, respectively.

Notice that `and.intro` and `and.elimination` are similar to the pairing and projection operations for the cartesian product. The difference is that given $H_p : p$ and $H_q : q$, `and.intro $H_p H_q$` has type $p \wedge q : \text{Prop}$, while `pair $H_p H_q$` has type $p \times q : \text{Type}$. The similarity between \wedge and \times is another instance of the Curry-Howard isomorphism, but in contrast to implication and the function space constructor, \wedge and \times are treated separately in Lean. With the analogy, however, the proof we have just constructed is similar to a function that swaps the elements of a pair.

Disjunction

The expression `or.intro_left q H_p` creates a proof of $p \vee q$ from a proof $H_p : p$. Similarly, `or.intro_right p H_q` creates a proof for $p \vee q$ using a proof $H_q : q$. These are the left and right *or-introduction* rules.

```
section
variables p q : Prop

example (Hp : p) : p ∨ q := or.intro_left q Hp
example (Hq : q) : p ∨ q := or.intro_right p Hq
end
```

The *or-elimination* rule is slightly more complicated. The idea is that we can prove r from $p \vee q$, by showing that r follows from p and that r follows from q . In other words, it is a proof “by cases.” In the expression `or.elim H_{pq} H_{pr} H_{qr}` , `or.elim` takes three arguments, $H_{pq} : p \vee q$, $H_{pr} : p \rightarrow r$ and $H_{qr} : q \rightarrow r$, and produces a proof of r . In the following example, we use `or.elim` to prove $p \vee q \rightarrow q \vee p$.

```
section
variables p q r : Prop
example (H : p ∨ q) : q ∨ p :=
```

```

or.elim H
  (assume Hp : p,
   show q ∨ p, from or.intro_right q Hp)
  (assume Hq : q,
   show q ∨ p, from or.intro_left p Hq)
end

```

In most cases, the first argument of `or.intro_right` and `or.intro_left` can be inferred automatically by Lean. Lean therefore provides `or.inr` and `or.inl` as shorthands for `or.intro_right` and `or.intro_left`. Thus the proof term above could be written more concisely:

```

section
  variables p q r : Prop
  example (H : p ∨ q) : q ∨ p := or.elim H (λHp, or.inr Hp) (λHq, or.inl Hq)
end

```

Notice that there is enough information in the full expression for Lean to infer the types of `Hp` and `Hq` as well. But using the type annotations in the longer version makes the proof more readable, and can help catch and debug errors.

Negation and Falsity

The expression `not_intro H` produces a proof of $\neg p$ from $H : p \rightarrow \text{false}$. That is, we obtain $\neg p$ if we can derive a contradiction from p . The expression `not_elim Hnp Hp` produces a proof of `false` from $Hp : p$ and $Hnp : \neg p$. The next example uses these rules to produce a proof of $(p \rightarrow q) \rightarrow \neg q \rightarrow \neg p$.

```

section
  variables p q : Prop
  example (Hpq : p → q) (Hnq : ¬q) : ¬p :=
  not.intro
    (assume Hp : p,
     show false, from not.elim Hnq (Hpq Hp))
end

```

In the standard library, $\neg p$ is actually an *abbreviation* for $p \rightarrow \text{false}$, that is, the fact that p implies a contradiction. You can check that `not.intro` then amounts to the introduction rule for implication. The rule `not.elim`, that is, the principle $\neg p \rightarrow p \rightarrow \text{false}$, can be derived from function application as the term `assume Hnp, assume Hp, Hnp Hp`. We can thus avoid the use of `not.intro` and `not.elim` entirely, in favor of abstraction and elimination:

```

section
  variables p q : Prop

```

```

example (Hpq : p → q) (Hnq : ¬q) : ¬p :=
  assume Hp : p, Hnq (Hpq Hp)
end

```

The connective `false` has a single elimination rule, `false.elim`, which expresses the fact that anything follows from a contradiction. This rule is sometimes called the *principle of explosion*, or *ex falso* (short for *ex falso sequitur quodlibet*).

```

section
  variables p q : Prop
  example (Hp : p) (Hnp : ¬p) : q := false.elim (Hnp Hp)
end

```

The arbitrary fact, `q`, that follows from falsity is an implicit argument in `false.elim` and is inferred automatically. This pattern, deriving an arbitrary fact from contradictory hypotheses, is quite common, and is represented by `absurd`.

```

section
  variables p q : Prop
  example (Hp : p) (Hnp : ¬p) : q := absurd Hp Hnp
end

```

Here, for example, is a proof of $\neg p \rightarrow q \rightarrow (q \rightarrow p) \rightarrow r$:

```

section
  variables p q r : Prop
  example (Hnp : ¬p) (Hq : q) (Hqp : q → p) : r :=
    absurd (Hqp Hq) Hnp
end

```

Incidentally, just as `false` has only an elimination rule, `true` has only an introduction rule, `true.intro` : `true`, sometimes abbreviated `trivial` : `true`. In other words, `true` is simply true, and has a canonical proof, `trivial`.

Logical Equivalence

The expression `iff.intro H1 H2` produces a proof of $p \leftrightarrow q$ from $H1 : p \rightarrow q$ and $H2 : q \rightarrow p$. The expression `iff.elim_left H` produces a proof of $p \rightarrow q$ from $H : p \leftrightarrow q$. Similarly, `iff.elim_right H` produces a proof of $q \rightarrow p$ from $H : p \leftrightarrow q$. Here is a proof of $p \wedge q \leftrightarrow q \wedge p$:

```

section
  variables p q : Prop
  example : p ∧ q ↔ q ∧ p :=
    iff.intro

```

```

    (assume H : p ∧ q,
      show q ∧ p, from and.intro (and.right H) (and.left H))
  (assume H : q ∧ p,
    show p ∧ q, from and.intro (and.right H) (and.left H))
end

```

3.4 Introducing Auxiliary Subgoals

This is a good place to introduce another device Lean offers to help structure long proofs, namely, the `have` construct, which introduces an auxiliary subgoal in a proof. Here is a small example, adapted from the last section:

```

section
  variables p q : Prop

  example (H : p ∧ q) : q ∧ p :=
    have Hp : p, from and.left H,
    have Hq : q, from and.right H,
    show q ∧ p, from and.intro Hq Hp
end

```

Internally, the expression `have H : p, from s, t` produces the term $(\lambda(H : p), t) s$. In other words, `s` is a proof of `p`, `t` is a proof of the desired conclusion assuming `H : p`, and the two are combined by a lambda abstraction and application. This simple device is extremely useful when it comes to structuring long proofs, since we can use intermediate `have`'s as stepping stones leading to the final goal.

3.5 Classical Logic

The introduction and elimination rules we have seen so far are all constructive, which is to say, they reflect a computational understanding of the logical connectives based on the propositions-as-types correspondence. Ordinary classical logic adds to this the law of the excluded middle, $p \vee \neg p$. To use this principle, you have to load the appropriate classical axioms.

```

import logic.axioms.classical

constant p : Prop
check em p

```

Alternatively, you can simply write `import classical` to import the classical version of the standard library.

Intuitively, the constructive “or” is very strong: asserting $p \vee q$ amounts to knowing which is the case. If RH represents the Riemann hypothesis, a classical mathematician is willing to assert $\text{RH} \vee \neg\text{RH}$, even though we cannot yet assert either disjunct.

One consequence of the law of the excluded middle is the principle of double-negation elimination:

```

theorem dne {p : Prop} (H :  $\neg\neg p$ ) : p :=
or.elim (em p)
  (assume Hp : p, Hp)
  (assume Hnp :  $\neg p$ , absurd Hnp H)

```

Double-negation elimination allows one to prove any proposition, p , by assuming $\neg p$ and deriving **false**, because the latter amounts to proving $\neg\neg p$. In other words, double-negation elimination allows one to carry out a proof by contradiction, something which is not generally possible in constructive logic. As an exercise, you might try proving the converse, that is, showing that **em** can be proved from **dne**.

Loading the classical axioms also gives you access to additional patterns of proof, what can be justified by appeal to **em**. For example, one can carry out a proof by cases:

```

section
  variable p : Prop

  example (H :  $\neg\neg p$ ) : p :=
  by_cases
    (assume H1 : p, H1)
    (assume H1 :  $\neg p$ , absurd H1 H)
end

```

Or you can carry out a proof by contradiction:

```

section
  variable p : Prop

  example (H :  $\neg\neg p$ ) : p :=
  by_contradiction
    (assume H1 :  $\neg p$ ,
      show false, from H H1)
end

```

If you are not used to thinking constructively, it may take some time for you to get a sense of where classical reasoning is used. It is needed in the following example because, from a constructive standpoint, knowing that p and q are not both true does not necessarily tell you which one is false:

```

import classical

variables p q : Prop

example (H : ¬ (p ∧ q)) : ¬ p ∨ ¬ q :=
or.elim (em p)
  (assume Hp : p,
    or.inr
      (show ¬q, from
        assume Hq : q,
        H (and.intro Hp Hq)))
  (assume Hp : ¬p,
    or.inl Hp)

```

We will see later that there *are* situations in constructive logic where principles like excluded middle and double-negation elimination are permissible, and Lean supports the use of classical reasoning in such contexts. Importing `logic.axioms.classical` allows one to use such reasoning freely.

There are additional classical axioms that are not included by default in the standard library. We will discuss these in detail in a later chapter.

3.6 Examples of Propositional Validities

Lean’s standard library contains proofs of many valid statements of propositional logic, all of which you are free to use in proofs of your own. In this section, we will review some common identities, and encourage you to try proving them on your own using the rules above.

The following is a long list of assertions in propositional logic. Prove as many as you can, using the rules introduced above to replace the `sorry` placeholders by actual proofs. The ones that require classical reasoning are grouped together at the end, while the rest are constructively valid.

```

import logic.axioms.classical

section
  variables p q r s : Prop

  -- commutativity of ∧ and ∨
  example : p ∧ q ↔ q ∧ p := sorry
  example : p ∨ q ↔ q ∨ p := sorry

  -- associativity of ∧ and ∨
  example : (p ∧ q) ∧ r ↔ p ∧ (q ∧ r) := sorry
  example : (p ∨ q) ∨ r ↔ p ∨ (q ∨ r) := sorry

  -- distributivity
  example : p ∧ (q ∨ r) ↔ (p ∧ q) ∨ (p ∧ r) := sorry
  example : p ∨ (q ∧ r) ↔ (p ∨ q) ∧ (p ∨ r) := sorry

```

```

-- other properties
example : (p → (q → r)) ↔ (p ∧ q → r) := sorry
example : ((p ∨ q) → r) ↔ (p → r) ∧ (q → r) := sorry
example : (p → r ∨ s) → ((p → r) ∨ (p → s)) := sorry
example : ¬(p ∨ q) ↔ ¬p ∧ ¬q := sorry
example : ¬p ∨ ¬q → ¬(p ∧ q) := sorry
example : ¬(p ∧ ¬p) := sorry
example : p ∧ ¬q → ¬(p → q) := sorry
example : ¬p → (p → q) := sorry
example : (¬p ∨ q) → (p → q) := sorry
example : p ∨ false ↔ p := sorry
example : p ∧ false ↔ false := sorry
example : ¬(p ↔ ¬p) := sorry
example : (p → q) → (¬q → ¬p) := sorry

-- these require classical reasoning
example : (p → r ∨ s) → ((p → r) ∨ (p → s)) := sorry
example : ¬(p ∧ q) → ¬p ∨ ¬q := sorry
example : ¬(p → q) → p ∧ ¬q := sorry
example : (p → q) → (¬p ∨ q) := sorry
example : (¬q → ¬p) → (p → q) := sorry
example : p ∨ ¬p := sorry
example : (((p → q) → p) → p) := sorry
end

```

The `sorry` identifier magically produces a proof of anything, or provides an object of any data type at all. Of course, it is unsound as a proof method – for example, you can use it to prove `false` – and Lean produces severe warnings when files use or import theorems which depend on it. But it is very useful for building long proofs incrementally. Start writing the proof from the top down, using `sorry` to fill in subproofs. Make sure Lean accepts the term with all the `sorry`'s; if not, there are errors that you need to correct. Then go back and replace each `sorry` with an actual proof, until no more remain.

Here is another useful trick. Instead of using `sorry`, you can use an underscore `_` as a placeholder. Recall that this tells Lean that the argument is implicit, and should be filled in automatically. If Lean tries to do so and fails, it returns with an error message “don’t know how to synthesize placeholder.” This is followed by the type of the term it is expecting, and all the objects and hypothesis available in the context. In other words, for each unresolved placeholder, Lean reports the subgoal that needs to be filled at that point. You can then construct a proof by incrementally filling in these placeholders.

For reference, below are two sample proofs of validities taken from the list above.

```

import logic.terms.classical

section
  variables p q r : Prop

  -- distributivity
  example : p ∧ (q ∨ r) ↔ (p ∧ q) ∨ (p ∧ r) :=
    iff.intro
      (assume H : p ∧ (q ∨ r),

```

```

have Hp : p, from and.left H,
or.elim (and.right H)
  (assume Hq : q,
    show (p ∧ q) ∨ (p ∧ r), from or.inl (and.intro Hp Hq))
  (assume Hr : r,
    show (p ∧ q) ∨ (p ∧ r), from or.inr (and.intro Hp Hr)))
(assume H : (p ∧ q) ∨ (p ∧ r),
or.elim H
  (assume Hpq : p ∧ q,
    have Hp : p, from and.left Hpq,
    have Hq : q, from and.right Hpq,
    show p ∧ (q ∨ r), from and.intro Hp (or.inl Hq))
  (assume Hpr : p ∧ r,
    have Hp : p, from and.left Hpr,
    have Hr : r, from and.right Hpr,
    show p ∧ (q ∨ r), from and.intro Hp (or.inr Hr)))

-- an example that requires classical reasoning
example : ¬(p ∧ ¬q) → (p → q) :=
assume H : ¬(p ∧ ¬q),
assume Hp : p,
show q, from
  or.elim (em q)
    (assume Hq : q, Hq)
    (assume Hnq : ¬q, absurd (and.intro Hp Hnq) H)
end

```

Quantifiers and Equality

The last chapter introduced you to methods that construct proofs of statements involving the propositional connectives. In this chapter, we extend the repertoire of logical constructions to include the universal and existential quantifiers, and the equality relation.

4.1 The Universal Quantifier

Notice that if A is any type, we can represent a unary predicate p on A as an object of type $A \rightarrow \text{Prop}$. In that case, given $x : A$, $p\ x$ denotes the assertion that p holds of x . Similarly, an object $r : A \rightarrow A \rightarrow \text{Prop}$ denotes a binary relation on A : given $x\ y : A$, $r\ x\ y$ denotes the assertion that x is related to y .

The universal quantifier, $\forall x : A, p\ x$ is supposed to denote the assertion that “for every $x : A$, $p\ x$ ” holds. As with the propositional connectives, in systems of natural deduction, “forall” is governed by an introduction and elimination rule. Informally, the introduction rule states:

Given a proof of $p\ x$, in a context where $x : A$ is arbitrary, we obtain a proof $\forall x : A, p\ x$.

The elimination rule states:

Given a proof $\forall x : A, p\ x$ and any term $t : A$, we obtain a proof of $p\ t$.

As was the case for implication, the propositions-as-types interpretation now comes into play. Remember the introduction and elimination rules for Π types:

Given a term t of type $B\ x$, in a context where $x : A$ is arbitrary, we have $(\lambda x : A, t) : \Pi x : A, B\ x$.

The elimination rule states:

Given a term $s : \prod x : A, B\ x$ and any term $t : A$, we have $s\ t : B\ t$.

In the case where $p\ x$ has type Prop , if we replace $\prod x : A, B\ x$ with $\forall x : A, p\ x$, we can read these as the correct rules for building proofs involving the universal quantifier.

The Calculus of Inductive Constructions therefore identifies \prod and \forall in this way. If p is any expression, $\forall x : A, p$ is nothing more than alternative notation for $\prod x : A, p$, with the idea is that the former is more natural in cases where p is a proposition. Typically, the expression p will depend on $x : A$. Recall that, in the case of ordinary function spaces, we could interpret $A \rightarrow B$ as the special case of $\prod x : A, B$ in which B does not depend on x . Similarly, we can think of an implication $p \rightarrow q$ between propositions as the special case of $\forall x : p, q$ in which the expression q does not depend on x .

Here is an example of how the propositions-as-types correspondence gets put into practice.

```

section
  variables (A : Type) (p q : A → Prop)

  example : (∀ x : A, p x ∧ q x) → ∀ y : A, p y :=
  assume H : ∀ x : A, p x ∧ q x,
  take y : A,
  show p y, from and.elim_left (H y)
end

```

As a notational convention, we give the universal quantifier the widest scope possible, so parentheses are needed to limit the quantifier over x to the hypothesis in the example above. The canonical way to prove $\forall y : A, p\ y$ is to take an arbitrary y , and prove $p\ y$. This is the introduction rule. Now, given that H has type $\forall x : A, p\ x \wedge q\ x$, $H\ y$ has type $p\ y \wedge q\ y$. This is the elimination rule. Taking the left conjunct gives the desired conclusion, $p\ y$.

Remember that expressions which differ up to renaming of bound variables are considered to be equivalent. So, for example, we could have used the same variable, x , in both the hypothesis and conclusion, or chosen the variable z instead of y in the proof:

```

example : (∀ x : A, p x ∧ q x) → ∀ y : A, p y :=
assume H : ∀ x : A, p x ∧ q x,
take z : A,
show p z, from and.elim_left (H z)

```

As another example, here is how we can express the fact that a relation, r , is transitive:

```

section
  variables (A : Type) (r : A → A → Prop)

```

```

variable trans_r :  $\forall x\ y\ z, r\ x\ y \rightarrow r\ y\ z \rightarrow r\ x\ z$ 

variables (a b c : A)
variables (Hab : r a b) (Hbc : r b c)

check trans_r
check trans_r a b c
check trans_r a b c Hab
check trans_r a b c Hab Hbc
end

```

Think about what is going on here. When we instantiate `trans_r` at the values `a b c`, we end up with a proof of $r\ a\ b \rightarrow r\ b\ c \rightarrow r\ a\ c$. Applying this to the “hypothesis” `Hab : r a b`, we get a proof of the implication $r\ b\ c \rightarrow r\ a\ c$. Finally, applying it to the hypothesis `Hbc` yields a proof of the conclusion $r\ a\ c$.

In situations like this, it can be tedious to supply the arguments `a b c`, when they can be inferred from `Hab Hbc`. For that reason, it is common to make these arguments implicit:

```

section
variables (A : Type) (r : A  $\rightarrow$  A  $\rightarrow$  Prop)
variable (trans_r :  $\forall\{x\ y\ z\}, r\ x\ y \rightarrow r\ y\ z \rightarrow r\ x\ z$ )

variables (a b c : A)
variables (Hab : r a b) (Hbc : r b c)

check trans_r
check trans_r Hab
check trans_r Hab Hbc
end

```

The advantage is that we can simply write `trans_r Hab Hbc` as a proof of $r\ a\ c$. The disadvantage is that Lean does not have enough information to infer the types of the arguments in the expressions `trans_r` and `trans_r Hab`. In the output of the `check` command, an expression like `?z A r trans_r a b c Hab Hbc` indicates an arbitrary value, that may depend on any of the values listed (in this case, all the variables in the section).

Here is an example of how we can carry out elementary reasoning with an equivalence relation:

```

section
variables (A : Type) (r : A  $\rightarrow$  A  $\rightarrow$  Prop)

variable refl_r :  $\forall x, r\ x\ x$ 
variable symm_r :  $\forall\{x\ y\}, r\ x\ y \rightarrow r\ y\ x$ 
variable trans_r :  $\forall\{x\ y\ z\}, r\ x\ y \rightarrow r\ y\ z \rightarrow r\ x\ z$ 

example (a b c d : A) (Hab : r a b) (Hcb : r c b) (Hcd : r c d) : r a d :=
  trans_r (trans_r Hab (symm_r Hcb)) Hcd
end

```

You might want to try to prove some of these equivalences:

```

section
  variables (A : Type) (p q : A → Prop)

  example : (∀x, p x ∧ q x) ↔ (∀x, p x) ∧ (∀x, q x) := sorry
  example : (∀x, p x → q x) → (∀x, p x) → (∀x, q x) := sorry
  example : (∀x, p x) ∨ (∀x, q x) → ∀x, p x ∨ q x := sorry
end

```

You should also try to understand why the reverse implication is not derivable in the last example.

It is often possible to bring a component outside a universal quantifier, when it does not depend on the quantified variable (one direction of the second of these requires classical logic):

```

section
  variables (A : Type) (p q : A → Prop)
  variable r : Prop

  example : A → (∀x : A, r) ↔ r := sorry
  example : (∀x, p x ∨ r) ↔ (∀x, p x) ∨ r := sorry
  example : (∀x, r → p x) ↔ (r → ∀x, p x) := sorry
end

```

As a final example, consider the “barber paradox”, that is, the claim that in a certain town there is a (male) barber that shaves all and only the men who do not shave themselves. Prove that this implies a contradiction:

```

section
  variables (men : Type) (barber : men) (shaves : men → men → Prop)

  example (H : ∀x : men, shaves barber x ↔ ¬shaves x x) : false := sorry
end

```

It is the typing rule for Pi types, and the universal quantifier in particular, that distinguishes `Prop` from other types. Suppose we have $A : \text{Type}. \{i\}$ and $B : \text{Type}. \{j\}$, where the expression B may depend on a variable $x : A$. Then the type of $\Pi x : A, B$ is an element of $\text{Type}. \{\text{imax } i \ j\}$, where $\text{imax } i \ j$ is the maximum of i and j if j is not 0, and 0 otherwise.

The idea is as follows. If j is not 0, then $\Pi x : A, B$ is an element of $\text{Type}. \{\text{max } i \ j\}$. In other words, the type of dependent functions from A to B “lives” in the universe with smallest index greater-than or equal to the indices of the universes of A and B . Suppose, however, that B is of $\text{Type}. \{0\}$, that is, an element of `Prop`. In that case, $\Pi x : A, B$ is an element of $\text{Type}. \{0\}$ as well, no matter which type universe A lives in. In other words, if B

is a proposition depending on A , then $\forall x : A, B$ is again a proposition. This reflects the interpretation of `Prop` as the type of propositions rather than data, and it is what makes `Prop` *impredicative*. In contrast to the standard kernel, such a `Prop` is absent from Lean’s kernel for homotopy type theory.

The term “predicative” stems from foundational developments around the turn of the twentieth century, when logicians such as Poincaré and Russell blamed set-theoretic paradoxes on the “vicious circles” that arise when we define a property by quantifying over a collection that includes the very property being defined. Notice that if A is any type, we can form the type $A \rightarrow \text{Prop}$ of all predicates on A (the “power type of A ”). The impredicativity of `Prop` means that we can form propositions that quantify over $A \rightarrow \text{Prop}$. In particular, we can define predicates on A by quantifying over all predicates on A , which is exactly the type of circularity that was once considered problematic.

4.2 Equality

Let us now turn to one of the most fundamental relations defined in Lean’s library, namely, the equality relation. In the next chapter, we will explain *how* equality is defined, from the primitives of Lean’s logical framework. In the meanwhile, here we explain how to use it.

Of course, a fundamental property of equality is that it is an equivalence relation:

```
check eq.refl
check eq.symm
check eq.trans
```

Thus, for example, we can specialize the example from the previous section to the equality relation:

```
example (A : Type) (a b c d : A) (Hab : a = b) (Hcb : c = b) (Hcd : c = d) :
  a = d :=
eq.trans (eq.trans Hab (eq.symm Hcb)) Hcd
```

If we “open” the `eq` namespace, the names become shorter:

```
open eq

example (A : Type) (a b c d : A) (Hab : a = b) (Hcb : c = b) (Hcd : c = d) :
  a = d :=
trans (trans Hab (symm Hcb)) Hcd
```

Lean even defines convenient notation for writing proofs like this:

```
open eq.ops
```

```
example (A : Type) (a b c d : A) (Hab : a = b) (Hcb : c = b) (Hcd : c = d) :
  a = d :=
  Hab · Hcb-1 · Hcd
```

You can use `\tr` to enter the transitivity dot, and `\sy` to enter the inverse/symmetry symbol.

Reflexivity is more powerful than it looks. Recall that terms in the Calculus of Inductive Constructions have a computational interpretation, and that the logical framework treats terms with a common reduct as the same. As a result, some nontrivial identities can be proved by reflexivity:

```
import data.nat data.prod
open nat prod

example (A B : Type) (f : A → B) (a : A) : (λx, f x) a = f a := eq.refl _
example (A B : Type) (a : A) (b : A) : pr1 (a, b) = a := eq.refl _
example : 2 + 3 = 5 := eq.refl _
```

This feature of the framework is so important that the library defines a notation `rfl` for `eq.refl _`:

```
example (A B : Type) (f : A → B) (a : A) : (λx, f x) a = f a := rfl
example (A B : Type) (a : A) (b : A) : pr1 (a, b) = a := rfl
example : 2 + 3 = 5 := rfl
```

Equality is much more than an equivalence relation, however. It has the important property that every assertion respects the equivalence, in the sense that we can substitute equal expressions without changing the truth value. That is, given $H1 : a = b$ and $H2 : P\ a$, we can construct a proof for $P\ b$ using substitution: `eq.subst H1 H2`.

```
example (A : Type) (a b : A) (P : A → Prop) (H1 : a = b) (H2 : P a) : P b :=
  eq.subst H1 H2

example (A : Type) (a b : A) (P : A → Prop) (H1 : a = b) (H2 : P a) : P b :=
  H1 ► H2
```

The triangle in the second presentation is, once again, made available by opening `eq.ops`, and you can use `\t` to enter it. The term `H1 ► H2` is just notation for `eq.subst H1 H2`. This notation is used extensively in the Lean standard library.

Here is an example of a calculation in the natural numbers that uses substitution combined with associativity, commutativity, and distributivity of the natural numbers. Of

course, carrying out such calculations require being able to invoke such supporting theorems. You can find a number of identities involving the natural numbers in the associated library files, for example, in the module `data.nat.basic`. In the next chapter, we will have more to say about how to find theorems in Lean’s library.

```
import data.nat
open nat eq.ops

example (x y : ℕ) : (x + y) * (x + y) = x * x + y * x + x * y + y * y :=
have H1 : (x + y) * (x + y) = (x + y) * x + (x + y) * y, from !mul.left_distrib,
have H2 : (x + y) * (x + y) = x * x + y * x + (x * y + y * y),
  from !mul.right_distrib ► !mul.right_distrib ► H1,
!add.assoc-1 ► H2
```

The exclamation mark infers explicit arguments to a theorem from the context. For more information, see Section 8.2. In the statement of the example, remember that addition implicitly associates to the left, so the last step of the proof puts the right-hand side of H2 in the required form.

It is often important to be able to carry out substitutions like this by hand, but it is tedious to prove examples like the one above in this way. Fortunately, Lean provides an environment that provides better support for such calculations, which we will turn to now.

4.3 The Calculation Environment

A calculational proof is just a chain of intermediate results that are meant to be composed by basic principles such as the transitivity of $=$. In Lean, a calculation proof starts with the keyword `calc`, and has the following syntax:

```
calc
  <expr>_0 'op_1' <expr>_1 ':' <proof>_1
  '...' 'op_2' <expr>_2 ':' <proof>_2
  ...
  '...' 'op_n' <expr>_n ':' <proof>_n
```

Each `<proof>_i` is a proof for `<expr>_{i-1} op_i <expr>_i`. The `<proof>_i` may also be of the form `{ <pr> }`, where `<pr>` is a proof for some equality `a = b`. The form `{ <pr> }` is just syntactic sugar for `eq.subst <pr> (refl <expr>_{i-1})`. In other words, we are claiming we can obtain `<expr>_i` by replacing `a` with `b` in `<expr>_{i-1}`.

Here is an example:

```
import data.nat
open nat

section
```

```

variables (a b c d e : nat)
variable H1 : a = b
variable H2 : b = c + 1
variable H3 : c = d
variable H4 : e = 1 + d

theorem T : a = e :=
calc
  a      = b      : H1
  ... = c + 1    : H2
  ... = d + 1    : {H3}
  ... = 1 + d    : add.comm d 1
  ... = e      : eq.symm H4
end

```

The `calc` command can be configured for any relation that supports some form of transitivity. It can even combine different relations.

```

import data.nat
open nat

theorem T2 (a b c : nat) (H1 : a = b) (H2 : b = c + 1) : a ≠ 0 :=
calc
  a      = b      : H1
  ... = c + 1    : H2
  ... = succ c   : add_one c
  ... ≠ 0       : succ_ne_zero c

```

Lean offers some nice additional features. If the justification for a line of a calculations proof is `foo`, Lean will try adding implicit arguments if `foo` alone fails to do the job. If that doesn't work, Lean will try the symmetric version, `foo-1`, again adding arguments if necessary. If that doesn't work, Lean proceeds to try `{foo}` and `{foo-1}`, again, adding arguments if necessary. This can simplify the presentation of a `calc` proof considerably. Consider, for example, the following proof of the identity in the last section:

```

example (x y : ℕ) : (x + y) * (x + y) = x * x + y * x + x * y + y * y :=
calc
  (x + y) * (x + y) = (x + y) * x + (x + y) * y : mul.left_distrib
  ... = x * x + y * x + (x + y) * y           : mul.right_distrib
  ... = x * x + y * x + (x * y + y * y)         : mul.right_distrib
  ... = x * x + y * x + x * y + y * y           : add.assoc

```

As an exercise, we suggest carrying out a similar expansion of $(x - y) * (x + y)$, using in the appropriate order the theorems `mul.left_distrib`, `mul.comm` and `add.comm` and the theorems `mul_sub_right_distrib` and `add_sub_add_left` in the module `data.nat.sub`. Note that this exercise is slightly more involved than the previous example, because the subtraction on natural numbers is truncated (with $n - m = 0$ when m is greater than or equal to n).

4.4 The Simplifier

[TO DO: this section needs to be written. Emphasize that the simplifier can be used in conjunction with calc.]

4.5 The Existential Quantifier

Finally, consider the existential quantifier, which can be written as either `exists x : A, p x` or $\exists x : A, p x$. Both versions are actually notationally convenient abbreviations for a more long-winded expression, `Exists (λx : A, p x)`, defined in Lean’s library.

As you should by now expect, the library includes both an introduction rule and an elimination rule. The introduction rule is straightforward: to prove $\exists x : A, p x$, it suffices to provide a suitable term `t` and a proof of `p t`. Here are some examples:

```
import data.nat
open nat

example : ∃x, x > 0 :=
have H : 1 > 0, from succ_pos 0,
exists.intro 1 H

example (x : ℕ) (H : x > 0) : ∃y, y < x :=
exists.intro 0 H

example (x y z : ℕ) (Hxy : x < y) (Hyx : y < z) : ∃w, x < w ∧ w < z :=
exists.intro y (and.intro Hxy Hyx)

check @exists.intro
```

Note that `exists.intro` has implicit arguments: Lean has to infer the predicate $p : A \rightarrow \text{Prop}$ in the conclusion $\exists x, p x$. This is not a trivial affair. For example, if we have `Hg : g 0 0 = 0` and write `exists.intro 0 Hg`, there are many possible values for the predicate `p`, corresponding to the theorems $\exists x, g x x = x$, $\exists x, g x x = 0$, $\exists x, g x 0 = x$, etc. Lean uses the context to infer which one is appropriate. This is illustrated in the following example, in which we set the option `pp.implicit` to true to ask Lean’s pretty-printer to show the implicit arguments.

```
import data.nat
open nat

section
  variable g : ℕ → ℕ → ℕ
  variable Hg : g 0 0 = 0

  theorem gex1 : ∃ x, g x x = x := exists.intro 0 Hg
  theorem gex2 : ∃ x, g x 0 = x := exists.intro 0 Hg
  theorem gex3 : ∃ x, g 0 0 = x := exists.intro 0 Hg
```

```

theorem gex4 :  $\exists x, g\ x\ x = 0 := \text{exists.intro } 0\ Hg$ 

set_option pp.implicit true -- display implicit arguments
check gex1
check gex2
check gex3
check gex4
end

```

We can view `exists.intro` as an information-hiding operation: we are “hiding” the witness to the body of the assertion. The existential elimination rule, `exists.elim`, performs the opposite operation. It allows us to prove a proposition q from $\exists x : A, p\ x$, by showing that q follows from $p\ w$ for an arbitrary value w . Roughly speaking, since we know there is an x satisfying $p\ x$, we can give it a name, say, w . Showing that q follows from $p\ w$, where q does not mention w , is tantamount to showing the q follows from the existence of any such x .

(It may be helpful to compare the exists-elimination rule to the or-elimination rule. The assertion $\exists x : A, p\ x$ can be thought of as a big disjunction of the propositions $p\ a$, as a ranges over all the elements of A .)

Notice that exists introduction and elimination are very similar to the sigma introduction `sigma.mk` and elimination. The difference is that given $a : A$ and $h : p\ a$, `exists.intro a h` has type $(\exists x : A, p\ x) : \text{Prop}$ and `sigma.mk a h` has type $(\Sigma x : A, p\ x) : \text{Type}$. The similarity between \exists and Σ is another instance of the Curry-Howard isomorphism.

In the following example, we define `even a` as $\exists b, a = 2*b$, and then we show that the sum of two even numbers is an even number.

```

import data.nat
open nat

definition even (a : nat) :=  $\exists b, a = 2*b$ 

theorem even_plus_even {a b : nat} (H1 : even a) (H2 : even b) : even (a + b) :=
exists.elim H1 (fun (w1 : nat) (Hw1 : a = 2*w1),
exists.elim H2 (fun (w2 : nat) (Hw2 : b = 2*w2),
  exists.intro (w1 + w2)
    (calc
      a + b = 2*w1 + b      : Hw1
      ...   = 2*w1 + 2*w2   : Hw2
      ...   = 2*(w1 + w2)   : mul.left_distrib)))

```

Lean provides syntactic sugar for `exists.elim`, with expressions of the form `obtain` `_, from` `_, _`. With this syntax, the example above can be presented in a more natural way: :

```

import data.nat
open nat

```

```

definition even (a : nat) :=  $\exists b, a = 2*b$ 

theorem even_plus_even {a b : nat} (H1 : even a) (H2 : even b) :
  even (a + b) :=
  obtain (w1 : nat) (Hw1 : a = 2*w1), from H1,
  obtain (w2 : nat) (Hw2 : b = 2*w2), from H2,
  exists.intro (w1 + w2)
    (calc
      a + b = 2*w1 + b      : Hw1
      ... = 2*w1 + 2*w2    : Hw2
      ... = 2*(w1 + w2)    : mul.left_distrib)

```

Just as the constructive “or” is stronger than the classical “or,” so, too, is the constructive “exists” stronger than the classical “exists”. For example, the following implication requires classical reasoning because, from a constructive standpoint, knowing that it is not the case that every x satisfies p is not the same as having a particular x that satisfies $\neg p$.

```

import classical

variables (A : Type) (p : A → Prop)

example (H :  $\neg \forall x, p\ x$ ) :  $\exists x, p\ x$  :=
by_contradiction
  (assume H1 :  $\neg \exists x, p\ x$ ,
   have H2 :  $\forall x, \neg p\ x$ , from
     take x,
     assume H3 : p x,
     have H4 :  $\exists x, p\ x$ , from exists.intro x H3,
     show false, from H1 H4,
     show false, from H H2)

```

What follows are some common identities involving the existential quantifier. We encourage you to prove as many as you can. We are also leaving it to you to determine which are nonconstructive, and hence require some form of classical reasoning.

```

import classical
section
  variables (A : Type) (p q : A → Prop)
  variable r : Prop

  example : ( $\exists x : A, r$ ) → r := sorry
  example (a : A) : r → ( $\exists x : A, r$ ) := sorry
  example : ( $\exists x, p\ x \wedge r$ ) ↔ ( $\exists x, p\ x$ ) ∧ r := sorry
  example : ( $\exists x, p\ x \vee q\ x$ ) ↔ ( $\exists x, p\ x$ ) ∨ ( $\exists x, q\ x$ ) := sorry

  example : ( $\forall x, p\ x$ ) ↔  $\neg(\exists x, \neg p\ x)$  := sorry
  example : ( $\exists x, p\ x$ ) ↔  $\neg(\forall x, \neg p\ x)$  := sorry
  example : ( $\neg \exists x, p\ x$ ) ↔ ( $\forall x, \neg p\ x$ ) := sorry
  example : ( $\neg \forall x, p\ x$ ) ↔ ( $\exists x, \neg p\ x$ ) := sorry

  example : ( $\forall x, p\ x \rightarrow r$ ) ↔ ( $\exists x, p\ x$ ) → r := sorry

```

```
example (a : A) : (∃x, p x → r) ↔ (∀x, p x) → r := sorry
example (a : A) : (∃x, r → p x) ↔ (r → ∃x, p x) := sorry

end
```

Interacting with Lean

You are now familiar with the fundamentals of dependent type theory, both as a language for defining mathematical objects and a language for constructing proofs. The one thing you are missing is a mechanism for defining new data types. We will fill this gap in the next chapter, which introduces the notion of an *inductive data type*. But first, in this chapter, we take a break from the mechanics of type theory to explore some pragmatic aspects of interacting with Lean.

5.1 Displaying Information

There are a number of ways in which you can query Lean for information about its current state and the objects and theorems that are available in the current context. You have already seen two of the most common ones, `check` and `eval`. Remember that `eval` is often used in conjunction with the `@` operator, which makes all of the arguments to a theorem or definition explicit. In addition, Lean offers a `print definition` command, that shows the value of a defined symbol.

```
import data.nat

-- examples with equality
check eq
check @eq
check eq.symm
check @eq.symm

print definition eq.symm

-- examples with and
```



```

check and
check and.intro
check @and.intro

-- examples with addition
open nat
check add
check @add
eval add 3 2
print definition add

-- a user-defined function
definition foo {A : Type} (x : A) : A := x

check foo
check @foo
eval foo
eval (foo @nat.zero)
print definition foo

```

Note that `print definition` only works with objects introduced with `definition`, `theorem`, and the like. For example, entering `print definition eq` or `print definition and.intro` yields an error. This is because `eq` and `and.intro` are not defined symbols, but, rather, symbols introduced by the Lean's inductive definition package, which we will describe in the next chapter.

There are other useful `print` commands:

<code>print notation</code>	: display all notation
<code>print notation <tokens></code>	: display notation using any of the tokens
<code>print axioms</code>	: display assumed axioms
<code>print options</code>	: display options set by user or emacs mode
<code>print prefix <namespace></code>	: display all declarations in the namespace
<code>print coercions</code>	: display all coercions
<code>print coercions <source></code>	: display only the coercions from <source>
<code>print classes</code>	: display all classes
<code>print instances <class name></code>	: display all instances of the given class
<code>print fields <structure></code>	: display all "fields" of a structure

We will discuss classes, instances, and structures in a later chapter. Here are examples of how the `print` commands are used:

```

import standard algebra.ring

open prod sum int nat algebra

print notation
print notation + * -
print axioms
print options
print prefix nat
print prefix nat.le

```

```
print coercions
print coercions num
print classes
print instances ring
print fields ring
```

Another useful command, although the implementation is still rudimentary at this stage, is the `find decl` command. This can be used to find theorems whose conclusion matches a given pattern. The syntax is as follows:

```
find_decl <pattern> [, filter]*
```

where `<pattern>` is an expression with “holes” (underscores), and a filter is of the form

```
+ id (id is a substring of the declaration)
- id (id is not a substring of the declaration)
id (id is a substring of the declaration)
```

For example:

```
import data.nat

open nat
find_decl ((_ * _) = (_ * _))
find_decl (_ * _) = _, +assoc
find_decl (_ * _) = _, -assoc

find_decl _ < succ _, +imp, -le
```

5.2 Setting Options

Lean maintains a number of internal variables that can be set by users to control its behavior. The syntax for doing so is as follows:

```
set_option <name> <value>
```

One very useful family of options controls the way Lean’s *pretty-printer* displays terms. The following options take an input of true or false:

```
pp.implicit : display implicit arguments
pp.universes : display hidden universe parameters
pp.coercions : show coercions
pp.notation : display output using defined notations
pp.beta : beta reduce terms before displaying them
```

In Lean, *coercions* can be inserted automatically to cast an element of one data type to another, for example, to cast an element of `nat` to an element of `int`. We will discuss coercions in a later chapter. This list is not exhaustive; you can see a complete list by typing `set_option pp.` and then using tab-completion in the Emacs mode for Lean, discussed below.

As an example, the following settings yield much longer output:

```
import data.nat
open nat

set_option pp.implicit true
set_option pp.universes true
set_option pp.notation false
set_option pp.numerals false

check 2 + 2 = 4
eval (λx, x + 2) = (λx, x + 3)

set_option pp.beta true
check (λ x, x + 1) 1
```

Pretty printing additional information is often very useful when you are debugging a proof, or trying to understand a cryptic error message. Too much information can be overwhelming, though, and Lean’s defaults are generally sufficient for ordinary interactions.

5.3 Using the Library

To use Lean effectively you will inevitably need to make use of definitions and theorems in the library. Recall that the `import` command at the beginning of a file imports previously compiled results from other files, and that importing is transitive; if you import `foo` and `foo` imports `bar`, then the definitions and theorems from `bar` are available to you as well. But the act of opening a namespace — which provides shorter names, notations, rewrite rules, and more — does not carry over. In each file, you need to open the namespaces you wish to use.

For many purposes, `import standard` and `open standard` will give you a good set of defaults. Even so, it is important for you to be familiar with the library and its contents, so you know what theorems, definitions, notations, and resources are available to you. Below we will see that Lean’s Emacs mode can also help you find things you need, but studying the contents of the library directly is often unavoidable.

Lean has two libraries. Here we will focus on the standard library, which offers a conventional mathematical framework. We will discuss the library for homotopy type theory in a later chapter.

There are a number of ways to explore the contents of the standard library. You can find the file structure online, on github:

<https://github.com/leanprover/lean/tree/master/library>

You can see the contents of the directories and files using github’s browser interface. If you have installed Lean on your own computer, you can find the library in the `lean` folder, and explore it with your file manager. Comment headers at the top of each file provide additional information.

Alternatively, there are “markdown” files in the library that provide links to the same files but list them in a more natural order, and provide additional information and annotations.

<https://github.com/leanprover/lean/blob/master/library/library.md>

You can again browse these through the github interface, or with a markdown reader on your computer.

Lean’s library developers follow general naming guidelines to make it easier to guess the name of a theorem you need, or to find it using tab completion in Lean’s Emacs mode, which is discussed in the next section. To start with, common “axiomatic” properties of an operation like conjunction or multiplication are put in a namespace that begins with the name of the operation:

```
import standard algebra.ordered_ring
open nat algebra

check and.comm
check mul.comm
check and.assoc
check mul.assoc
check @mul.left_cancel -- multiplication is left cancelative
```

In particular, this includes `intro` and `elim` operations for logical connectives, and properties of relations:

```
check and.intro
check and.elim
check or.intro_left
check or.intro_right
check or.elim

check eq.refl
check eq.symm
check eq.trans
```

For the most part, however, we rely on descriptive names. Often the name of theorem simply describes the conclusion:

```
check succ_ne_zero
check @mul_zero
check @mul_one
check @sub_add_eq_add_sub
check @le_iff_lt_or_eq
```

If only a prefix of the description is enough to convey the meaning, the name may be made even shorter:

```
check @neg_neg
check pred_succ
```

Sometimes, to disambiguate the name of theorem or better convey the intended reference, it is necessary to describe some of the hypotheses. The word “of” is used to separate these hypotheses:

```
check lt_of_succ_le
check @lt_of_not_le
check @lt_of_le_of_ne
check @add_lt_add_of_lt_of_le
```

Sometimes abbreviations or alternative descriptions are easier to work with. For example, we use `pos`, `neg`, `nonpos`, `nonneg` rather than `zero.lt`, `lt.zero`, `le.zero`, and `zero.le`.

```
check @mul_pos
check @mul_nonpos_of_nonneg_of_nonpos
check @add_lt_of_lt_of_nonpos
check @add_lt_of_nonpos_of_lt
```

Sometimes the word “left” or “right” is helpful to describe variants of a theorem.

```
check @add_le_add_left
check @add_le_add_right
check @le_of_mul_le_mul_left
check @le_of_mul_le_mul_right
```

5.4 Lean’s Emacs Mode

This tutorial is designed to be read alongside Lean’s web-browser interface, which runs a Javascript-compiled version of Lean inside your web browser. But there is a much more powerful interface to Lean that runs as a special mode in the Emacs text editor. Our goal in this section is to consider some of the advantages and features of the Emacs interface.

If you have never used the Emacs text editor before, you should spend some time experimenting with it. Emacs is an extremely powerful text editor, but it can also be overwhelming. There are a number of introductory tutorials on the web, including these:

[Emacs tour](#)

[Emacs beginners guide](#)

[Emacs course](#)

You can get pretty far simply using the menus at the top of the screen for basic editing and file management. Those menus list keyboard-equivalents for the commands. Notation like “C-x”, short for “control x,” means “hold down the control key while typing x.” The notation “M-x”, short for “Meta x,” means “hold down the Alt key while typing x,” or, equivalently, “press the Esc key, followed by x.” For example, the “File” menu lists “C-c C-s” as a keyboard-equivalent for the “save file” command.

There are a number of benefits to using the native version of Lean instead of the web interface. Perhaps the most important is file management. The web interface imports the entire standard library internally, which is why some examples in this tutorial have to put examples in a namespace, “hide,” to avoid conflicting with objects already defined in the standard library. Moreover, the web interface only operates on one file at a time. Using the Emacs editor, you can create and edit Lean theory files anywhere on your file system, as with any editor or word processor. From these files, you can import pieces of the library at will, as well as your own theories, defined in separate files.

To use the Emacs with Lean, you simply need to create a file with the extension “.lean” and edit it. (For files that should be checked in the homotopy type theory framework, use “.hlean” instead.) For example, you can create a file by typing `emacs my_file.lean` in a terminal window, in the directory where you want to keep the file. Assuming everything has been installed correctly, Emacs will start up in Lean mode, already checking your file in the background.

You can then start typing, or copy any of the examples in this tutorial. (In the latter case, make sure you include the `import` and `open` commands that are sometimes hidden in the text.) Lean mode offers syntax highlighting, so commands, identifiers, and so on are helpfully color-coded. Any errors that Lean detects are subtly underlined in red, and the editor displays an exclamation mark in the left margin. As you continue to type and eliminate errors, these annotations magically disappear.

If you put the cursor on a highlighted error, Emacs displays the error message in at the bottom of the frame. Alternatively, if you type `C-c ! 1` while in Lean mode, Emacs opens a new window with a list of compilation errors. Lean relies on an Emacs mode, *Flycheck*, for this functionality, as evidenced by the letters “FlyC” that appear in the Emacs information line. An asterisk next to these letters indicates that Flycheck is actively checking the file, using Lean. Flycheck offers a number of commands that begin with `C-c !`. For example, `C-c ! n` moves the cursor to the next error, and `C-c ! p` moves the cursor to the previous

error. You can get to a help menu that lists these key bindings by clicking on the “FlyC” tag.

It may be disconcerting to see a perfectly good proof suddenly “break” when you change a single character. If this proof is in the middle of a file you are working on, the Lean interface will moreover raise an error at every subsequent reference to the theorem. But these complaints vanish as soon as the correctness of the theorem is restored. Lean is quite fast and caches previous work to speed up compilation, and changes you make are registered almost instantaneously.

The Emacs Lean mode also maintains a continuous dialog with a background Lean process and uses it to present useful information to you. For example, if you put your cursor on any identifier — a theorem name, a defined symbol, or a variable — Emacs displays the its type in the information line at the bottom. If you put the cursor on the opening parenthesis of an expression, Emacs displays the type of the expression.

This works even for implicit arguments. If you put your cursor on an underscore symbol, then, assuming Lean’s elaborator was successful in inferring the value, Emacs shows you that value and its type. Typing “C-c C-f” replaces the inferred value with the underscore. In cases where Lean is unable to infer a value of an implicit argument, the underscore is highlighted, and the error message indicates the type of the “hole” that needs to be filled. This can be extremely useful when constructing proofs incrementally. One can start typing a “proof sketch,” using either `sorry` or an underscore for details you intend to fill in later. Assuming the proof is correct modulo these missing pieces of information, the error message at an unfilled underscore tells you the type of the term you need to construct, typically an assertion you need to justify.

The Lean mode supports tab completion. In a context where Lean expects an identifier (e.g. a theorem name or a defined symbol), if you start typing and then hit the tab key, a popup window suggests possible matches or near-matches for the expression you have typed. This helps you find the theorems you need without having to browse the library. You can also press tab after an `import` command, to see a list of possible imports, or after the `set_option` command, to see a list of options.

If you put your cursor on an identifier that is defined in Lean’s library and hit “M-.”, Emacs will take you to the identifier’s definition in the library file itself. This works even in an autocompletion popup window: if you start typing an identifier, press the tab key, choose a completion from the list of options, and press “M-.”, you are taken to the symbol’s definition. When you are done, pressing “M-*” takes you back to your original position.

There are other useful tricks. If you see some notation in a Lean file and you want to know how to enter it from the keyboard, put the cursor on the symbol and type “C-c C-k”. You can set common Lean options with “C-c C-o”, and you can execute a Lean command using “C-c C-e”. These commands and others are summarized here:

Lean Emacs mode README

If for some reason the Lean background process does not seem to be responding (for

example, the information line no longer shows you type information), type “C-c C-r”, or “M-x lean-server-restart-process”, or choose “restart lean process” from the Lean menu, and with luck that will set things right again.

This is a good place to mention another trick that is sometimes useful when editing long files. In Lean, the “exit” command halts processing of the file abruptly. If you are making changes at the top of a long file and want to defer checking of the remainder of the file until you are done making those changes, you can temporarily insert an “exit”.

5.5 Projects

At this point, it will be helpful to convey more information about the inner workings of Lean. A `.lean` file (or `.hlean` file, if you are working on homotopy type theory) consists of instructions that tell Lean how to construct formal terms in dependent type theory. “Processing” this file is a matter of filling in missing or implicit information, constructing the relevant terms, and sending them to the type checker to confirm that they are well-formed and have the specified types. This is analogous to the compilation process for a programming language: the `.lean` or `.hlean` file contains the source code that is then compiled down to machine representations of the desired formal objects. Lean stores the output of the compilation process in files with the extension “`.olean`”, for “object Lean”.

It is these files, which we also refer to as “modules”, that are loaded by the `import` command. When Lean processes an `import` command, it looks for the relevant `.olean` files in standard places. By default, the search path consists of the root of the standard library (or the `hott` library, if the file is a `.hlean` file) and the current directory. You can specify subdirectories using periods in the module name: for example, `import foo.bar.baz` looks for the file “`foo/bar/baz.olean`” relative to any of the locations listed in the search path. A leading period, as in `import .foo.bar`, indicates that the `.olean` file in question is specified relative to the current directory. Two leading periods, as in `import ../foo.bar`, indicates that the address is relative to the parent directory, and so on.

If you enter the command `lean -o foo.olean foo.lean` from the command line, Lean processes `foo.lean` and, if it compiles successfully, it stores the output in `foo.olean`. The result is that another file can then `import foo`.

When you are editing a single file with either the web interface or the Emacs Lean mode, however, Lean only checks the file internally, without saving the `.olean` output. Suppose, then, you wish to build a project that has multiple files. What you really want is for Lean’s Emacs mode to build all the relevant `.olean` files in the background, so that you can import other modules freely.

The Emacs mode makes this easy. To start a project that may potentially involve more than one file, choose the folder where you want the project to reside, open an initial file in Emacs, choose “create a new project” from the Lean menu, and press the “open” button. This creates a file, `.project`, which instructs a background process to ensure that whenever

you are working on a file in that folder (or any subfolder thereof), compiled versions of all the modules it depends on are available and up to date.

Suppose you are editing `foo.lean`, which imports `bar`. You can switch to `bar.lean` and make additions or corrections to that file, then switch back to `foo` and continue working. The process `linja`, based on the `ninja` build system, ensures that `bar` is recompiled and that an up-to-date version is available to `foo`.

Incidentally, outside of Emacs, from a terminal window, you can type `linja` anywhere in your project folder to ensure that all your files have compiled `.olean` counterparts, and that they are up to date.

5.6 Notation and Abbreviations

Lean’s parser is an instance of a Pratt parser, a non-backtracking parser that is fast and flexible. You can read about Pratt parsers in a number of places online, such as here:

[Pratt’s parser at Wikipedia](#)

[Top down operator precedence parsing](#)

Identifiers can include any alphanumeric characters, including Greek characters (other than Π , Σ , and λ , which, as we have seen, have a special meaning in the dependent type theory). They can also include subscripts, which can be entered by typing “`_`” followed by the desired subscripted character.

Lean’s parser is moreover extensible, which is to say, we can define new notation.

```
import data.nat
open nat

notation `[ a `**` b `]` := a * b + 1

definition mul_square (a b : ℕ) := a * a * b * b

infix `<*>`:50 := mul_square

eval [2 ** 3]
eval 2 <*> 3
```

In this example, the `notation` command defines a complex binary notation for multiplying and adding one. The `infix` command declares a new infix operator, with precedence 50, which associates to the left. (More precisely, the token is given left-binding power 50.) The command `infixr` defines notation which associates to the right, instead.

If you declare these notations in a namespace, the notation is only operant when the namespace is open. You can declare temporary notation using the keyword `local`, in which case the notation is operant only in the current namespace or section (or in the current file when not in a namespace or section).

```
local notation `[ a `**` b `]` := a * b + 1
local infix `<*>`:50 := λa b : ℕ, a * a * b * b
```

The file `reserved.notation.lean` in the `init` folder of the library declares the left-binding powers of a number of common symbols that are used in the library.

https://github.com/leanprover/lean/blob/master/library/init/reserved_notation.lean

You are welcome to overload these symbols for your own use, but you cannot change their right-binding power.

Remember that you can direct the pretty-printer to suppress notation with the command `set_option pp.notation false`. You can also declare notation to be used for input purposes only with the `[parsing-only]` attribute:

```
import data.nat
open nat

notation [parsing-only] `[ a `**` b `]` := a * b + 1

section
  variables a b : ℕ
  check [a ** b]
end
```

The output of the `check` command displays the expression as `a * b + 1`.

Lean also provides mechanisms for iterated notation, such as `[a, b, c, d, e]` to denote a list with the indicated elements. See the discussion of `list` in the next chapter for an example.

Notation in Lean can be *overloaded*, which is to say, the same notation can be used for more than one purpose. In that case, Lean’s elaborator will try to disambiguate based on context.

```
import data.nat data.int
open nat int

section
  variables a b : int
  variables m n : nat
  check a + b
  check m + n
  print notation +
end
```

Lean provides an `abbreviation` mechanism that is similar to the notation mechanism.

```
import data.nat
open nat

abbreviation double (x : ℕ) : ℕ := x + x

theorem foo (x : ℕ) : double x = x + x := rfl
check foo
```

An abbreviation is a transient form of definition that is expanded as soon as an expression is processed. As with notation, however, the pretty-printer re-constitutes the expression and prints the type of `foo` as `double x = x + x`. As with notation, you can designate an abbreviation to be `[parsing-only]`, and you can direct the pretty-printer to suppress their use with the command `set_option pp.notation false`. Finally, again as with notation, you can limit the scope of an abbreviations by prefixing the declarations with the `local` modifier.

As the name suggests, abbreviations are intended to be used as convenient shorthand for long expressions. One common use is to abbreviate a long identifier:

```
definition my_long_identity_function {A : Type} (x : A) : A := x
local abbreviation my_id := @my_long_identity_function
```

5.7 Coercions

Lean also provides mechanisms to automatically insert *coercions* between types. These are user-defined functions between datatypes that make it possible to “view” one datatype as another. For example, Lean parses numerals like `123` to a special datatype known as `num`, which can, in turn, be coerced to the natural numbers, integers, reals and so on. Similarly, in any expression `a + n` where `a` is an integer and `n` is a natural number, `n` is coerced to an integer.

```
check 123
check (123 : nat)
check (123 : int)
check a + n
check n + a
check a + 123

set_option pp.coercions true
check 123
check (123 : nat)
check (123 : int)
check a + n
check n + a
check a + 123
```

Setting the option `pp.coercions` to `true` makes the coercions explicit. Coercions that are declared in a namespace are only available to the system when the namespace is opened. The notation `(t : T)` is an abbreviation for the expression `is_typeof T t`, where `is_typeof` is nothing more than fancy notation for the identity function. The point is that `T` is given explicitly, so that when you write `(t : T)`, you are specifying that `t` should be interpreted as an expression of type `T`. In the first `check` command, Lean decides that `123` is a numeral. The two commands after than indicate that it is intended to be viewed as a `nat` and as an `int`, respectively.

Here is an example of how we can define a coercion from the booleans to the natural numbers.

```
import data.bool data.nat
open bool nat

definition bool.to_nat [coercion] (b : bool) : nat :=
  bool.cond b 1 0

eval 2 + ff
eval 2 + tt
eval tt + tt + tt + ff

print coercions      -- show all coercions
print coercions bool -- show all coercions from bool
```

The tag “coercion” is an *attribute* that is associated with the symbol `bool.to_nat`. It does not change the meaning of `bool.to_nat`. Rather, it associates additional information to the symbol that informs Lean’s elaboration algorithm, as discussed in Section 8.3. We could also declare `bool.to_nat` to be a coercion after the fact as follows:

```
definition bool.to_nat (b : bool) : nat :=
  bool.cond b 1 0

attribute bool.to_nat [coercion]
```

In both cases, the scope of the coercion is the current namespace, so the coercion will be in place whenever the module is imported and the namespace is open. Sometimes it is useful to assign an attribute only temporarily. The `local` modifier ensures that the declaration is only operant in the current namespace or section:

```
definition bool.to_nat (b : bool) : nat :=
  bool.cond b 1 0

local attribute bool.to_nat [coercion]
```

For the elaborator to handle coercions effectively, restrictions are imposed on the types one can serve as the source and target: roughly, they have to be inductively defined types, as discussed in Section 8.1. As we will see, most defined datatypes are naturally of this form, and in any case it is always possible to “wrap” a definition as an inductively defined datatype.

Overloads and coercions introduce “choice points” in the elaboration process, forcing the elaborator to consider multiple options and backtrack appropriately. This can slow down the elaboration process. More seriously, it can make error messages less informative: Lean only reports the result of the last backtracking path, which means the failure that is reported to the user may be due to the wrong interpretation of an overload or coercion. This is why Lean provides mechanism for namespace management: parsing and elaboration go more smoothly when we only import the notation that we need.

Nonetheless, overloading is quite convenient, and often causes no problems. There are various ways to manually disambiguate an expression when necessary. One is to precede the expression with the notation `#<namespace>`, to specify the namespace in which notation is to be interpreted. Another is to replace the notation with an explicit function name. Yet a third is to use the `(τ : T)` notation to indicate the intended type.

```
import data.nat data.int
open nat int

check 2 + 2
eval 2 + 2

check #nat 2 + 2
eval #nat 2 + 2

check #int 2 + 2
eval #int 2 + 2

check nat.add 2 2
eval nat.add 2 2

check int.add 2 2
eval int.add 2 2

check (2 + 2 : nat)
eval (2 + 2 : nat)

check (2 + 2 : int)
eval (2 + 2 : int)

check 0

check nat.zero

check (0 : nat)
check (0 : int)
```

Inductive Types

We have seen that the Calculus of Constructions includes basic types, `Prop`, `Type.{1}`, `Type.{2}`, ..., and allows for the formation of dependent function types, $\Pi x : A. B$. In the examples, we have also made use of additional types like `bool`, `nat`, and `int`, and type constructors, like `list`, and product, \times . In fact, every concrete type other than the universes in Lean’s library, and every type constructor other than `Pi`, is an instance of a general family of type constructions known as *inductive types*. (The presence of these types is what distinguishes the Calculus of Inductive Constructions from its predecessor, the *Calculus of Constructions*.) It is remarkable that it is possible to construct a substantial edifice of mathematics based on nothing more than the type universes, `Pi` types, and inductive types; everything else follows from those.

Intuitively, an inductive type is built up from a specified list of constructors. In Lean, the syntax for specifying such a type is as follows:

```
inductive foo : Type :=
| constructor1 : ... → foo
| constructor2 : ... → foo
...
| constructorn : ... → foo
```

The intuition is that each constructor specifies a way of building new objects of `foo`, possibly from previously constructed values. The type `foo` consists of nothing more than the objects that are constructed in this way. The first character `|` in an inductive declaration is optional. We can also separate constructors using the character `=,=` instead of `|`.

We will see below that the arguments to the constructors can include objects of type `foo`, subject to a certain “positivity” constraint, which guarantees that elements of `foo` are

built from the bottom up. Roughly speaking, each `...` can be any Pi type constructed from `foo` and previously defined types, in which `foo` appears, if at all, only as the “target” of the Pi type. For more details, see [2].

We will provide a number of examples of inductive types. We will also consider slight generalizations of the scheme above, to mutually defined inductive types, and so-called *inductive families*.

As with the logical connectives, every inductive type comes with introduction rules, which show how to construct an element of the type, and elimination rules, which show how to “use” an element of the type in another construction. The analogy to the logical connectives should not come as a surprise; as we will see below, they, too, are examples of inductive type constructions. You have already seen the introduction rules for an inductive type: they are just the constructors that are specified in the definition of the type. The elimination rules provide for a principle of recursion on the type, which includes, as a special case, a principle of induction as well.

In the next chapter, we will describe Lean’s function definition package, which provides even more convenient ways to define functions on inductive types and carry out inductive proofs. But because the notion of an inductive type is so fundamental, we feel it is important to start with a low-level, hands-on understanding. We will start with some basic examples of inductive types, and work our way up to more elaborate and complex examples.

6.1 Enumerated Types

The simplest kind of inductive type is simply a type with a finite, enumerated list of elements.

```
inductive weekday : Type :=
| sunday : weekday
| monday : weekday
| tuesday : weekday
| wednesday : weekday
| thursday : weekday
| friday : weekday
| saturday : weekday
```

The `inductive` command creates a new type, `weekday`. The constructors all live in the `weekday` namespace.

```
check weekday.sunday
check weekday.monday

open weekday

check sunday
check monday
```

Think of the `sunday`, `monday`, ... as being distinct elements of `weekday`, with no other distinguishing properties. The elimination principle, `weekday.rec`, is defined at the same time as the type `weekday` and its constructors. It is also known as a *recursor*, and it is what makes the type “inductive”: it allows us to define a function on `weekday` by assigning values corresponding to each constructor. The intuition is that an inductive type is exhaustively generated by the constructors, and has no elements beyond those they construct.

We will use a slight (automatically generated) variant, `weekday.rec_on`, which takes its arguments in a more convenient order. Note that common names like `rec` and `rec_on` are not made available by default when we open the `weekday` namespace, to avoid clashes. If we import `nat`, we can use `rec_on` to define a function from `weekday` to the natural numbers:

```

definition number_of_day (d : weekday) : nat :=
weekday.rec_on d 1 2 3 4 5 6 7

eval number_of_day weekday.sunday
eval number_of_day weekday.monday
eval number_of_day weekday.tuesday

```

The first (explicit) argument to `rec_on` is the element being “analyzed.” The next seven arguments are the values corresponding to the seven constructors. Note that `number_of_day weekday.sunday` evaluates to 1: the computation rule for `rec_on` recognizes that `sunday` is a constructor, and returns the appropriate argument.

Below we will encounter a more restricted variant of `rec_on`, namely, `cases_on`. When it comes to enumerated types, `rec_on` and `cases_on` are the same. You may prefer to use the label `cases_on`, because it emphasizes that the definition is really a definition by cases.

```

definition number_of_day (d : weekday) : nat :=
weekday.cases_on d 1 2 3 4 5 6 7

```

It is often useful to group definitions and theorems related to a structure in a namespace with the same name. For example, we can put the `number_of_day` function in the `weekday` namespace. We are then allowed to use the shorter name when we open the namespace.

The names `rec_on`, `cases_on`, `induction_on`, and so on are generated automatically, and they are *protected* to avoid clashes; in other words, those names are not shorted by default when the namespace is open. You can explicitly declare the shorter identifiers as abbreviations at any time, however. Or, you can “unprotect” them using the `renaming` option when you open a namespace.

```

namespace weekday
  local abbreviation cases_on := @weekday.cases_on

  definition number_of_day (d : weekday) : nat :=

```

```

cases_on d 1 2 3 4 5 6 7
end weekday

eval weekday.number_of_day weekday.sunday

section
  open weekday (renaming cases_on → cases_on)

  eval number_of_day sunday
  check cases_on
end

```

We can define functions from `weekday` to `weekday`:

```

namespace weekday
  definition next (d : weekday) : weekday :=
    weekday.cases_on d monday tuesday wednesday thursday friday saturday sunday

  definition previous (d : weekday) : weekday :=
    weekday.cases_on d saturday sunday monday tuesday wednesday thursday friday

  eval next (next tuesday)
  eval next (previous tuesday)

  example : next (previous tuesday) = tuesday := rfl
end weekday

```

How can we prove general the general theorem that `next (previous d) = d` for any `weekday d`? The induction principle parallels the recursion principle: we simply have to provide a proof of the claim for each constructor:

```

theorem next_previous (d: weekday) : next (previous d) = d :=
  weekday.induction_on d
    (show next (previous sunday) = sunday, from rfl)
    (show next (previous monday) = monday, from rfl)
    (show next (previous tuesday) = tuesday, from rfl)
    (show next (previous wednesday) = wednesday, from rfl)
    (show next (previous thursday) = thursday, from rfl)
    (show next (previous friday) = friday, from rfl)
    (show next (previous saturday) = saturday, from rfl)

```

In fact, `induction_on` is just a special case of `rec_on` where the target type is an element of `Prop`. In other words, under the propositions-as-types correspondence, the principle of induction is a type of definition by recursion, where what is being “defined” is a proof instead of a piece of data. We could equally well have used `cases_on`:

```

theorem next_previous (d: weekday) : next (previous d) = d :=
  weekday.cases_on d
    (show next (previous sunday) = sunday, from rfl)

```

```

(show next (previous monday) = monday, from rfl)
(show next (previous tuesday) = tuesday, from rfl)
(show next (previous wednesday) = wednesday, from rfl)
(show next (previous thursday) = thursday, from rfl)
(show next (previous friday) = friday, from rfl)
(show next (previous saturday) = saturday, from rfl)

```

While the `show` commands make the proof clearer and more readable, they are not necessary:

```

theorem next_previous (d: weekday) : next (previous d) = d :=
weekday.cases_on d rfl rfl rfl rfl rfl rfl rfl rfl

```

Some fundamental data types in the Lean library are instances of enumerated types.

```

inductive empty : Type

inductive unit : Type :=
star : unit

inductive bool : Type :=
| ff : bool
| tt : bool

```

(To run these examples, we put them in a namespace called `hide`, so that a name like `bool` does not conflict with the `bool` in the standard library. This is necessary because these types are part of the Lean prelude that is automatically imported.)

The type `empty` is an inductive datatype with no constructors. The type `unit` has a single element, `star`, and the type `bool` represents the familiar boolean values. As an exercise, you should think about with the introduction and elimination rules for these types do. As a further exercise, we suggest defining boolean operations `band`, `bor`, `bnot` on the boolean, and verifying common identities. Note that defining a binary operation like `andb` will require nested cases splits:

```

definition band (b1 b2 : bool) : bool :=
bool.cases_on b1
  ff
  (bool.cases_on b2 ff tt)

```

Similarly, most identities can be proved by introducing suitable case splits, and then using `rfl`.

6.2 Constructors with Arguments

Enumerated types are a very special case of inductive types, in which the constructors take no arguments at all. In general, a “construction” can depend on data, which is then represented in the constructed argument. Consider the definitions of the product type and sum type in the library:

```
inductive prod (A B : Type) :=
mk : A → B → prod A B

inductive sum (A B : Type) : Type :=
| inl {} : A → sum A B
| inr {} : B → sum A B
```

For the moment, ignore the annotation `{}` after the constructors `inl` and `inr`; we will explain that below. In the meanwhile, think about what is going on in these examples. The product type has one constructor, `prod.mk`, which takes two arguments. To define a function on `prod A B`, we can assume the input is of the form `pair a b`, and we have to specify the output, in terms of `a` and `b`. We can use this to define the two projections for `prod`; remember that the standard library defines notation $A \times B$ for `prod A B` and `(a, b)` for `prod.mk a b`.

```
definition pr1 {A B : Type} (p : A × B) : A :=
prod.rec_on p (λa b, a)

definition pr2 {A B : Type} (p : A × B) : B :=
prod.rec_on p (λa b, b)
```

The function `pr1` takes a pair, `p`. Applying the recursor `prod.rec_on p (fun a b, a)` interprets `p` as a pair, `prod.mk a b`, and then uses the second argument to determine what to do with `a` and `b`.

Here is another example:

```
definition prod_example (p : bool × ℕ) : ℕ :=
prod.rec_on p (λb n, cond b (2 * n) (2 * n + 1))

eval prod_example (tt, 3)
eval prod_example (ff, 3)
```

The `cond` function is a boolean conditional: `cond b t1 t2` return `t1` if `b` is true, and `t2` otherwise. (It has the same effect as `bool.rec_on b t2 t1`.) The function `prod_example` takes a pair consisting of a boolean, `b`, and a number, `n`, and returns either $2 * n$ or $2 * n + 1$ according to whether `b` is true or false.

In contrast, the sum type has *two* constructors, `inl` and `inr` (for “insert left” and “insert right”), each of which takes *one* (explicit) argument. To define a function on `sum A B`, we have to handle two cases: either the input is of the form `inl a`, in which case we have to specify an output value in terms of `a`, or the input is of the form `inr b`, in which case we have to specify an output value in terms of `b`.

```

definition sum_example (s : ℕ + ℕ) : ℕ :=
  sum.cases_on s (λn, 2 * n) (λn, 2 * n + 1)

eval sum_example (inl 3)
eval sum_example (inr 3)

```

This example is similar to the previous one, but now an input to `sum_example` is implicitly either of the form `inl n` or `inr n`. In the first case, the function returns `2 * n`, and the second case, it returns `2 * n + 1`.

In the section after next we will see what happens when the constructor of an inductive type takes arguments from the inductive type itself. What characterizes the examples we consider in this section is that this is not the case: each constructor relies only on previously specified types.

Notice that a type with multiple constructors is disjunctive: an element of `sum A B` is either of the form `inl a` or of the form `inl b`. A constructor with multiple arguments introduces conjunctive information: from an element `prod.mk a b` of `prod A B` we can extract `a` and `b`. An arbitrary inductive type can include both features, by having any number of constructors, each of which takes any number of arguments.

A type, like `prod`, with only one constructor is purely conjunctive: the constructor simply packs the list of arguments into a single piece of data, essentially a tuple where the type of subsequent arguments can depend on the type of the initial argument. We can also think of such a type as a “record” or a “structure”. In Lean, these two words are synonymous, and provide alternative syntax for inductive types with a single constructor.

```

structure prod (A B : Type) :=
  mk :: (pr1 : A) (pr2 : B)

```

The `structure` command simultaneously introduces the inductive type, `prod`, its constructor, `mk`, the usual eliminators (`rec`, `rec_on`), as well as the projections, `pr1` and `pr2`, as defined above.

If you do not name the constructor, Lean uses `mk` as a default. For example, the following defines a record to store a color as a triple of RGB values:

```

record color := (red : nat) (green : nat) (blue : nat)
definition yellow := color.mk 255 255 0
eval color.red yellow

```

The definition of `yellow` forms the record with the three values shown, and the projection `color.red` returns the red component. The `structure` command is especially useful for defining algebraic structures, and Lean provides substantial infrastructure to support working with them. Here, for example, is the definition of a semigroup:

```
structure Semigroup : Type :=
  (carrier : Type)
  (mul : carrier → carrier → carrier)
  (mul_assoc : ∀ a b c, mul (mul a b) c = mul a (mul b c))
```

We will see more examples in Chapter 10.

Notice, by the way, that the product type depends on parameters `A B : Type` which are arguments to the constructors as well as `prod`. Lean detects when these arguments can be inferred from later arguments to a constructor, and makes them implicit in that case. Sometimes an argument can only be inferred from the return type, which means that it could not be inferred by parsing the expression from bottom up, but may be inferable from context. In that case, Lean does not make the argument implicit by default, but will do so if we add the annotation `{}` after the constructor. We used that option, for example, in the definition of `sum`:

```
inductive sum (A B : Type) : Type :=
| inl {} : A → sum A B
| inr {} : B → sum A B
```

As a result, the argument `A` to `inl` and the argument `B` to `inr` are left implicit.

We have already discussed sigma types, also known as the dependent product:

```
inductive sigma {A : Type} (B : A → Type) :=
  dpair : Π a : A, B a → sigma B
```

Two more examples of inductive types in the library are the following:

```
inductive option (A : Type) : Type :=
| none {} : option A
| some   : A → option A

inductive inhabited (A : Type) : Type :=
  mk : A → inhabited A
```

In the semantics of dependent type theory, there is no built-in notion of a partial function. Every element of a function type `A → B` or a Pi type `Π x : A, B` is assumed to have a value at every input. The `option` type provides a way of representing partial functions. An element of `option B` is either `none` or of the form `some b`, for some value `b : B`. Thus

we can think of an element `f` of the type `A → option B` as being a partial function from `A` to `B`: for every `a : A`, `f a` either returns `none`, indicating the `f a` is “undefined”, or `some b`.

An element of `inhabited A` is simply a witness to the fact that there is an element of `A`. Later, we will see that `inhabited` is an instance of a *type class* in Lean: Lean can be instructed that suitable base types are inhabited, and can automatically infer that other constructed types are inhabited on that basis.

As exercises, we encourage you to develop a notion of composition for partial functions from `A` to `B` and `B` to `C`, and show that it behaves as expected. We also encourage you to show that `bool` and `nat` are inhabited, that the product of two inhabited types is inhabited, and that the type of functions to an inhabited type is inhabited.

6.3 Inductively Defined Propositions

Inductively defined types can live in any type universe, including the bottom-most one, `Prop`. In fact, this is exactly how the logical connectives are defined.

```
inductive false : Prop

inductive true : Prop :=
intro : true

inductive and (a b : Prop) : Prop :=
intro : a → b → and a b

inductive or (a b : Prop) : Prop :=
| intro_left  : a → or a b
| intro_right : b → or a b
```

You should think about how these give rise to the introduction and elimination rules that you have already seen. There are rules that govern what the eliminator of an inductive type can eliminate *to*, that is, what kinds of types can be the target of a recursor. Roughly speaking, what characterizes inductive types in `Prop` is that one can only eliminate to other types in `Prop`. This is consistent with the understanding that if `P : Prop`, an element `p : P` carries no data. There is a small exception to this rule, however, which we will discuss below, in the section on inductive families.

Even the existential quantifier is inductively defined:

```
inductive Exists {A : Type} (P : A → Prop) : Prop :=
intro : ∀(a : A), P a → Exists P

definition exists.intro := @Exists.intro
```

Keep in mind that the notation $\exists x : A, P$ is syntactic sugar for `Exists (λx : A, P)`.

The definitions of `false`, `true`, `and`, and `or` are perfectly analogous to the definitions of `empty`, `unit`, `prod`, and `sum`. The difference is that the first group yields elements of `Prop`, and the second yields elements of `Type.{i}` for `i` greater than 0. In a similar way, $\exists x : A, P$ is a `Prop`-valued variant of $\Sigma x : A, P$.

This is a good place to mention another inductive type, denoted $\{x : A \mid P\}$, which is sort of a hybrid between $\exists x : A, P$ and $\Sigma x : A, P$.

```
inductive subtype {A : Type} (P : A → Prop) : Type :=
tag : !!x : A, P x → subtype P
```

The notation $\{x : A \mid P\}$ is syntactic sugar for `subtype (λx : A, P)`. It is modeled after subset notation in set theory: the idea is that $\{x : A \mid P\}$ denotes the collection of elements of `A` that have property `P`.

6.4 Defining the Natural Numbers

The inductively defined types we have seen so far are “flat”: constructors wrap data and insert it into a type, and the corresponding recursor unpacks the data and acts on it. Things get much more interesting when the constructors act on elements of the very type being defined. A canonical example is the type `nat` of natural numbers:

```
inductive nat : Type :=
| zero : nat
| succ : nat → nat
```

There are two constructors. We start with `zero : nat`; it takes no arguments, so we have it from the start. In contrast, the constructor `succ` can only be applied to a previously constructed `nat`. Applying it to `zero` yields `succ zero : nat`. Applying it again yields `succ (succ zero) : nat`, and so on. Intuitively, `nat` is the “smallest” type with these constructors, meaning that it is exhaustively (and freely) generated by starting with `zero` and applying `succ` repeatedly.

As before, the recursor for `nat` is designed to define a dependent function `f` from `nat` to any domain, that is, an element `f` of $\prod n : \text{nat}, C\ n$ for some `C : nat → Type`. It has to handle two cases: the case where the input is `zero`, and the case where the input is of the form `succ n` for some `n : nat`. In the first case, we simply specify a target value with the appropriate type, as before. In the second case, however, the recursor can assume that a value of `f` at `n` has already been computed. As a result, the next argument to the recursor specifies a value for `f (succ n)` in terms of `n` and `f n`. If we check the type of the recursor,

```
check @nat.rec_on
```

we find the following:

```

Π {C : nat → Type} (n : nat),
  C nat.zero → (Π (a : nat), C a → C (nat.succ a)) → C n

```

The implicit argument, C , is the codomain of the function being defined. In type theory it is common to say C is the **motive** for the elimination/recursion. The next argument, $n : \text{nat}$, is the input to the function. It is also known as the **major premise**. Finally, the two arguments after specify how to compute the zero and successor cases, as described above. They are also known as the **minor premises**.

Consider, for example, the addition function `add m n` on the natural numbers. Fixing m , we can define addition by recursion on n . In the base case, we set `add m zero` to m . In the successor step, assuming the value `add m n` is already determined, we define `add m (succ n)` to be `succ (add m n)`.

```

namespace nat

definition add (m n : nat) : nat :=
nat.rec_on n m (λn add_m_n, succ add_m_n)

-- try it out
eval add (succ zero) (succ (succ zero))

end nat

```

It is useful to put such definitions into a namespace, `nat`. We can then go on to define familiar notation in that namespace. The two defining equations for addition now hold definitionally:

```

notation 0 := zero
infix `+` := add

theorem add_zero (m : nat) : m + 0 = m := rfl
theorem add_succ (m n : nat) : m + succ n = succ (m + n) := rfl

```

Proving a fact like $0 + m = m$, however, requires a proof by induction. As observed above, the induction principle is just a special case of the recursion principle, when the codomain $C\ n$ is an element of `Prop`. It represents the familiar pattern of an inductive proof: to prove $\forall n, C\ n$, first prove $C\ 0$, and then, for arbitrary n , assume $IH : C\ n$ and prove $C\ (\text{succ } n)$.

```

local abbreviation induction_on := @nat.induction_on

theorem zero_add (n : nat) : 0 + n = n :=
induction_on n

```

```

(show 0 + 0 = 0, from rfl)
(take n,
  assume IH : 0 + n = n,
  show 0 + succ n = succ n, from
    calc
      0 + succ n = succ (0 + n) : rfl
      ... = succ n : IH)

```

In the example above, we encourage you to replace `induction_on` with `rec_on` and observe the theorem is still accepted by Lean. As we have seen above, `induction_on` is just a special case of `rec_on`.

For another example, let us prove the associativity of addition, $\forall m\ n\ k, m + n + k = m + (n + k)$. (The notation $+$, as we have defined it, associates to the left, so $m + n + k$ is really $(m + n) + k$.) The hardest part is figuring out which variable to do the induction on. Since addition is defined by recursion on the second argument, k is a good guess, and once we make that choice the proof almost writes itself:

```

theorem add_assoc (m n k : nat) : m + n + k = m + (n + k) :=
induction_on k
  (show m + n + 0 = m + (n + 0), from rfl)
  (take k,
    assume IH : m + n + k = m + (n + k),
    show m + n + succ k = m + (n + succ k), from
      calc
        m + n + succ k = succ (m + n + k) : rfl
        ... = succ (m + (n + k)) : IH
        ... = m + succ (n + k) : rfl
        ... = m + (n + succ k) : rfl)

```

For another example, suppose we try to prove the commutativity of addition. Choosing induction on the second argument, we might begin as follows:

```

theorem add_comm (m n : nat) : m + n = n + m :=
induction_on n
  (show m + 0 = 0 + m, from eq.symm (zero_add m))
  (take n,
    assume IH : m + n = n + m,
    calc
      m + succ n = succ (m + n) : rfl
      ... = succ (n + m) : IH
      ... = succ n + m : sorry)

```

At this point, we see that we need another supporting fact, namely, that `succ (n + m) = succ n + m`. We can prove this by induction on m :

```

theorem succ_add (m n : nat) : succ m + n = succ (m + n) :=
induction_on n
  (show succ m + 0 = succ (m + 0), from rfl)

```

```

(take n,
  assume IH : succ m + n = succ (m + n),
  show succ m + succ n = succ (m + succ n), from
  calc
    succ m + succ n = succ (succ m + n) : rfl
    ... = succ (succ (m + n)) : IH
    ... = succ (m + succ n) : rfl)

```

We can then replace the `sorry` in the previous proof with `succ.add`.

As an exercise, try defining other operations on the natural numbers, such as multiplication, the predecessor function (with `pred 0 = 0`), and truncated subtraction (with `n - m = 0` when `m` is greater than or equal to `n`), exponentiation. Then try proving some of their basic properties, building on the theorems we have already proved.

```

-- define mul by recursion on the second argument
definition mul (m n : nat) : nat := sorry

infix `*` := mul

-- these should be proved by rfl
theorem mul_zero (m : nat) : m * 0 = 0 := sorry
theorem mul_succ (m n : nat) : m * (succ n) = m * n + m := sorry

theorem zero_mul (n : nat) : 0 * n = 0 := sorry

theorem mul_distrib (m n k : nat) : m * (n + k) = m * n + m * k := sorry

theorem mul_assoc (m n k : nat) : m * n * k = m * (n * k) := sorry

-- hint: you will need to prove an auxiliary statement
theorem mul_comm (m n : nat) : m * n = n * m := sorry

definition pred (n : nat) : nat := nat.cases_on n zero (fun n, n)

theorem pred_succ (n : nat) : pred (succ n) = n := sorry

theorem succ_pred (n : nat) : n ≠ 0 → succ (pred n) = n := sorry

```

6.5 Other Inductive Types

Let us consider some more examples of inductively defined types. For any type, `A`, the type `list A` of lists of elements of `A` is defined in the library.

```

inductive list (A : Type) : Type :=
| nil {} : list A
| cons : A → list A → list A

namespace list

variable {A : Type}

```

```

notation h :: t := cons h t

definition append (s t : list A) : list A :=
list.rec t (λx l u, x::u) s

notation s ++ t := append s t

theorem nil_append (t : list A) : nil ++ t = t := rfl

theorem cons_append (x : A) (s t : list A) : x::s ++ t = x::(s ++ t) := rfl

end list

```

A list of elements of type A is either the empty list, `nil`, or an element $h : A$ followed by a list $t : \text{list } A$. We define the notation $h :: t$ to represent the latter. The first element, h , is commonly known as the “head” of the list, and the remainder, t , is known as the “tail.” Recall that the notation $\{\}$ in the definition of the inductive type ensures that the argument to `nil` is implicit. In most cases, it can be inferred from context. When it cannot, we have to write `@nil A` to specify the type A .

Lean allows us to define iterative notation for lists:

```

inductive list (A : Type) : Type :=
| nil {} : list A
| cons : A → list A → list A

namespace list

notation `[` 1:(foldr ``,` (h t, cons h t) nil) `]` := 1

section
  open nat
  check [1, 2, 3, 4, 5]
  check typeof [1, 2, 3, 4, 5] : list ℕ
end

end list

```

In the first `check`, Lean assumes that `[1, 2, 3, 4, 5]` is merely a list of numerals. The `typeof` command forces Lean to interpret it as a list of natural numbers.

As an exercise, prove the following:

```

theorem append_nil (t : list A) : t ++ nil = t := sorry

theorem append_assoc (r s t : list A) : r ++ s ++ t = r ++ (s ++ t) := sorry

```

Try also defining the function `length : $\Pi A : \text{Type}$, $\text{list } A \rightarrow \text{nat}$` which returns the length of a list, and prove that it behaves as expected (for example, `length (s ++ t) = length s + length t`).

For another example, we can define the type of binary trees:

```
inductive binary_tree :=
| leaf : binary_tree
| node : binary_tree → binary_tree → binary_tree
```

In fact, we can even define the type of countably branching trees:

```
import data.nat
open nat

inductive cbtree :=
| leaf : cbtree
| sup : (ℕ → cbtree) → cbtree

namespace cbtree

definition succ (t : cbtree) : cbtree :=
sup (λn, t)

definition omega : cbtree :=
sup (nat.rec leaf (λn t, succ t))

end cbtree
```

6.6 Generalizations

Now, we consider two generalizations of inductive types that are sometimes useful. First, Lean supports *mutually defined inductive types*. The idea is that we can define two (or more) inductive types at the same time, where each one refers to the other.

```
inductive tree (A : Type) : Type :=
| node : A → forest A → tree A
with forest : Type :=
| nil : forest A
| cons : tree A → forest A → forest A
```

In this example, a **tree** with elements labeled from **A** is of the form **node a f**, where **a** is an element of **A** (the label), and **f** a forest. At the same time, a **forest** of trees with elements labeled from **A** is essentially defined to be a list of trees.

With some work, such mutually defined inductive definitions could be reduced to ordinary inductive definitions. A more powerful generalization is given by the possibility of defining inductive type **families**. There are indexed families of types defined by a simultaneous induction of the following form:

```

inductive foo : ... → Type :=
| constructor1 : ... → foo ...
| constructor2 : ... → foo ...
...
| constructorn : ... → foo ...

```

In contrast to ordinary inductive definition, which construct an element of `Type`, the more general version constructs a function `... → Type`, where “...” denotes a sequence of argument types (also known as indices). Each constructor then constructs an element of some type in the family. One example is the definition of `vector A n`, the type of vectors of elements of `A` of length `n`:

```

inductive vector (A : Type) : nat → Type :=
| nil {} : vector A zero
| cons   : Π {n}, A → vector A n → vector A (succ n)

```

Notice that the `cons` constructor takes an element of `vector A n`, and returns an element of `vector A (succ n)`, thereby using an element of one member of the family to build an element of another.

Another example is given by the family of types `fin n`. For each `n`, `fin n` is supposed to denote a generic type of `n` elements:

```

inductive fin : nat → Type :=
| fz : Π n, fin (nat.succ n)
| fs : Π {n}, fin n → fin (nat.succ n)

```

This example may be hard to understand, so you should take the time to think about how it works.

Yet another example is given by the definition of the equality type in the library:

```

inductive eq {A : Type} (a : A) : A → Prop :=
refl : eq a a

```

For each fixed `A : Type` and `a : A`, this definition constructs a family of types `eq a x`, indexed by `x : A`. Notably, however, there is only one constructor, `refl`, which is an element of `eq a a`. Intuitively, the only way to construct a proof of `eq a x` is to use reflexivity, in the case where `x` is `a`. Note that `eq a a` is the only inhabited type in the family of types `eq a x`. The elimination principle generated by Lean says that `eq` is the *least* reflexive relation on `A`. The eliminator/recursor for `eq` is of the form

```

eq.rec_on : Π {A : Type} {a : A} {C : A → Type} {b : A}, a = b → C a → C b

```

It is a remarkable fact that all the basic axioms for equality follow from the constructor, `refl`, and the eliminator, `eq.rec_on`.

This eliminator also illustrates an important exception to the fact that inductive definitions living in `Prop` can only eliminate to `Prop`. Because there is only one constructor to `eq`, it carries no information, other than the type is inhabited, and Lean’s internal logic allows us to eliminate to an arbitrary `Type`. This is how we define a *cast* operation that casts an element from type `A` into `B` when a proof `p : eq A B` is provided:

```
theorem cast {A B : Type} (p : eq A B) (a : A) : B :=
eq.rec_on p a
```

The recursor `eq.rec_on` is also used to define substitution:

```
theorem subst {A : Type} {a b : A} {P : A → Prop}
(H1 : eq a b) (H2 : P a) : P b :=
eq.rec H2 H1
```

Using the recursor with `H1 : a = b`, we may assume `a` and `b` are the same, in which case, `P b` and `P a` are the same.

It is not hard to prove that `eq` is symmetric and transitive. In the following example, we prove `symm` and leave as exercise the theorems `trans` and `congr` (congruence).

```
theorem symm {A : Type} {a b : A} (H : eq a b) : eq b a :=
subst H (eq.refl a)
```

```
theorem trans {A : Type} {a b c : A} (H1 : eq a b) (H2 : eq b c) : eq a c :=
sorry
```

```
theorem congr {A B : Type} {a b : A} (f : A → B) (H : eq a b) : eq (f a) (f b) :=
sorry
```

Further generalizations such as `induction-recursion` or `induction-induction` are not supported by Lean.

6.7 Heterogeneous Equality

Given `A : Type` and `B : A → Type`, suppose we want to generalize the congruence theorem `congr` in the previous example to dependent functions `f : Π x : A, B x`. The first obstacle is stating the theorem: the term `eq (f a) (f b)` is not type correct since `f a` has type `B a`, `f b` has type `B b`, and the equality predicate `eq` expects both arguments to have the same type. One standard solution is to use `eq.rec_on` (or `eq.rec`) to “cast” the type of `f a` from `B a` to `B b`. That is, we write `eq (eq.rec_on H (f a)) (f b)` instead of `eq (f a) (f b)`. Here is a proof of the generalized congruence theorem, with this approach:

```

theorem hcogr {A : Type} {B : A → Type} {a b : A} (f : Π x : A, B x)
  (H : eq a b) : eq (eq.rec_on H (f a)) (f b) :=
have h1 : ∀h : eq a a, eq (eq.rec_on h (f a)) (f a), from
  assume h : eq a a, eq.refl (eq.rec_on h (f a)),
have h2 : ∀h : eq a b, eq (eq.rec_on h (f a)) (f b), from
  eq.rec_on H h1,
show eq (eq.rec_on H (f a)) (f b), from
  h2 H

```

Another option is to define a *heterogeneous equality* `heq` that can equate terms of different types, so that we can write `heq (f a) (f b)` instead of `eq (eq.rec_on H (f a)) (f b)`. It is straightforward to define such an equality in Lean:

```

inductive heq {A : Type} (a : A) : Π{B : Type}, B → Prop :=
refl : heq a a

```

Moreover, given `a b : A`, we can prove `heq a b → eq a b` using proof irrelevance. This theorem is called `heq.to_eq` in the Lean standard library. We can now state and prove `hcogr` using heterogeneous equality. Note the proof is also more compact and easier to understand.

```

theorem hcogr {A : Type} {B : A → Type} {a b : A} (f : Π x : A, B x)
  (H : eq a b) : heq (f a) (f b) :=
eq.rec_on H (heq.refl (f a))

```

Heterogeneous equality, which gives elements of different types the illusion that they can be considered equal, is sometimes called *John Major equality*. (The name is a bit of political humor, due to Conor McBride.)

6.8 Automatically Generated Constructions

In the previous sections, we have seen that whenever we declare an inductive datatype `I`, the Lean kernel automatically declares its constructors (aka introduction rules), and generates and declares the eliminator/recursor `I.rec`. The eliminator expresses a principle of definition by recursion, as well as the principle of proof by induction. The kernel also associates a *computational rule* which determines how these definitions are eliminated when terms and proofs are normalized.

Consider, for example, the natural numbers. Given the motive `C : nat → Type`, and minor premises `fz : C zero` and `fs : Π(n : nat), C n → C (succ n)`, we have the following two computational rules: `nat.rec fz fs zero` reduces to `fz`, and `nat.rec fz fs (succ a)` reduces to `fs a (nat.rec fz fs a)`.

```

open nat

variable C : nat → Type
variable fz : C zero
variable fs :  $\Pi$  (n : nat), C n → C (succ n)

eval nat.rec fz fs zero
-- Recall that nat.rec_on is based on nat.rec
eval nat.rec_on zero fz fs

example : nat.rec fz fs zero = fz :=
rfl

variable a : nat

eval nat.rec fz fs (succ a)
eval nat.rec_on (succ a) fz fs

example (a : nat) : nat.rec fz fs (succ a) = fs a (nat.rec fz fs a) :=
rfl

```

The source code that validates an inductive declaration and generates the eliminator/recursor and computational rules is part of the Lean kernel. The kernel is also known as the *trusted code base*, because a bug in the kernel may compromise the soundness of the whole system.

When you define an inductive datatype, Lean automatically generates a number of useful definitions. We have already seen some of them: `rec_on`, `induction_on`, and `cases_on`. The module `M` that generates these definitions is *not* part of the trusted code base. A bug in `M` does not compromise the soundness of the whole system, since the kernel will catch such errors when type checking any incorrectly generated definition produced by `M`.

As described before, `rec_on` just uses its arguments in a more convenient order than `rec`. In `rec_on`, the major premise is provided before the minor premises. Constructions using `rec_on` are often easier to read and understand than the equivalent ones using `rec`.

```

open nat

print definition nat.rec_on

-- a possible definition of rec_on
definition rec_on {C : nat → Type} (n : nat)
  (fz : C zero) (fs :  $\Pi$  a, C a → C (succ a)) : C n :=
nat.rec fz fs n

```

Moreover, `induction_on` is just a special case of `rec_on` where the motive `C` is a proposition. Finally, `cases_on` is a special case of `rec_on` where the inductive/recursive hypotheses are omitted in the minor premises. For example, in `nat.cases_on` the minor premise `fs` has type Π (n : nat), C (succ n) instead of Π (n : nat), C n → C (succ n). Note that the inductive/recursive hypothesis `C n` has been omitted.

```

open nat

print definition nat.induction_on
print definition nat.cases_on

-- Possible definition for induction_on
definition induction_on {C : nat → Prop} (n : nat)
  (fz : C zero) (fs :  $\prod$  a, C a → C (succ a)) : C n :=
nat.rec_on n fz fs

-- Possible definition for cases_on
definition cases_on {C : nat → Prop} (n : nat)
  (fz : C zero) (fs :  $\prod$  a, C (succ a)) : C n :=
nat.rec_on n fz (fun (a : nat) (r : C a), fs a)

```

For any inductive datatype that is not a proposition, we can show that its constructors are injective and disjoint. For example, on `nat`, we can show that $\text{succ } a = \text{succ } b \rightarrow a = b$ (injectivity), and $\text{succ } a \neq \text{zero}$ (disjointness). Both proofs can be performed using the automatically generated definition `nat.no_confusion`. For any inductive datatype `I` (which is not a proposition), Lean automatically generates `I.no_confusion`. Given a motive `C` and an equality $h : c_1 \ t = c_2 \ s$, where c_1 and c_2 are two distinct `I` constructors, `I.no_confusion` constructs an inhabitant of `C`. This is essentially the *principle of explosion*: anything follows from a contradiction. Given $h : c \ t = c \ s$ (same constructor on both sides) and $t = s \rightarrow C$, `I.no_confusion` also constructs an inhabitant of `C`.

The type of `no_confusion` is based on the auxiliary definition `no_confusion_type`. Note also that the motive is an implicit argument in `no_confusion`. In the following example, we illustrate these constructions using the type `nat`.

```

open nat

-- The type of no_confusion depends on the auxiliary type no_confusion_type
check @nat.no_confusion

check nat.no_confusion_type

variable C : Type
variables a b : nat

eval nat.no_confusion_type C zero      (succ a)
-- C
eval nat.no_confusion_type C (succ a) zero
-- C
eval nat.no_confusion_type C zero      zero
-- C → C
eval nat.no_confusion_type C (succ a) (succ b)
-- (a = b → C) → C

```

It is not hard to prove that constructors are injective and disjoint using `no_confusion`. In the following example, we prove these two properties for `nat` and leave as exercise the

equivalent proofs for trees.

```

open nat

theorem succ_ne_zero (a : nat) (h : succ a = zero) : false :=
nat.no_confusion h

theorem succ_inj (a b : nat) (h : succ a = succ b) : a = b :=
nat.no_confusion h (fun e : a = b, e)

inductive tree (A : Type) : Type :=
| leaf : A → tree A
| node : tree A → tree A → tree A

open tree

variable {A : Type}

theorem leaf_ne_node {a : A} {l r : tree A}
(h : leaf a = node l r) : false :=
sorry

theorem leaf_inj {a b : A} (h : leaf a = leaf b) : a = b :=
sorry

theorem node_inj_left {l1 r1 l2 r2 : tree A}
(h : node l1 r1 = node l2 r2) : l1 = l2 :=
sorry

theorem node_inj_right {l1 r1 l2 r2 : tree A}
(h : node l1 r1 = node l2 r2) : r1 = r2 :=
sorry

```

If a constructor contains dependent arguments (such as `sigma.mk`), the generated `no_confusion` uses heterogeneous equality to equate arguments of different types:

```

variables (A : Type) (B : A → Type)
variables (a1 a2 : A) (b1 : B a1) (b2 : B a2)
variable (C : Type)

-- Remark: b1 and b2 have different types

eval sigma.no_confusion_type C (sigma.mk a1 b1) (sigma.mk a2 b2)
-- (a1 = a2 → b1 == b2 → C) → C

```

Lean also generates the predicate transformer `below` and the recursor `brec_on`. It is unlikely that you will ever need to use these constructions directly; they are auxiliary definitions used by the recursive equation compiler we will describe in the next chapter, and we will not discuss them further here.

6.9 Universe Levels

Since an inductive type lives in $\mathbf{Type}.\{i\}$ for some i , it is reasonable to ask *which* universe levels i can be instantiated to. The goal of this section is to explain the relevant constraints.

In the standard library, there are two cases, depending on whether the inductive type is specified to land in \mathbf{Prop} . Let us first consider the case where the inductive type is not specified to land in \mathbf{Prop} , which is the only case that arises in the homotopy type theory instantiation of the kernel. Recall that each constructor c in the definition of a family C of inductive types is of the form

$$c : \prod (a : A) (b : B[a]), C\ a\ p[a, b]$$

where a is a sequence of datatype parameters, b is the sequence of arguments to the constructors, and $p[a, b]$ are the indices, which determine which element of the inductive family the construction inhabits. Then the universe level i of C is constrained to satisfy the following:

For each constructor c as above, and each $B.k[a]$ in the sequence $B[a]$, if $B.k[a] : \mathbf{Type}.\{1\}$, we have $i \geq 1$.

In other words, the universe level i is required to be at least as large as the universe level of each type that represents an argument to a constructor.

When the inductive type C is specified to land in \mathbf{Prop} , there are no constraints on the universe levels of the constructor arguments. But these universe levels do have a bearing on the elimination rule. Generally speaking, for an inductive type in \mathbf{Prop} , the motive of the elimination rule is required to be in \mathbf{Prop} . The exception we alluded to in the discussion of equality above is this: we are allowed to eliminate to an arbitrary \mathbf{Type} when there is only one constructor, and each constructor argument is either in \mathbf{Prop} or an index. This exception, which makes it possible to treat ordinary equality and heterogeneous equality as inductive types, can be justified by the fact that the elimination rule cannot take advantage of any “hidden” information.

Because inductive types can be polymorphic over universe levels, whether an inductive definition lands in \mathbf{Prop} could, in principle, depend on how the universe levels are instantiated. To simplify the generation of the recursors, Lean adopts a convention that rules out this ambiguity: if you do not specify that the inductive type is an element of \mathbf{Prop} , Lean requires the universe level to be at least one. Hence, a type specified by single inductive definition is either always in \mathbf{Prop} or never in \mathbf{Prop} . For example, if A and B are elements of \mathbf{Prop} , $A \times B$ is assumed to have universe level at least one, representing a datatype rather than a proposition. The analogous definition of $A \times B$, where A and B are restricted to \mathbf{Prop} and the resulting type is declared to be an element of \mathbf{Prop} instead of \mathbf{Type} , is exactly the definition of $A \wedge B$.

Induction and Recursion

Other than the type universes and Pi types, inductively defined types provide the only means of defining new types in the Calculus of Inductive Constructions. We have also seen that, fundamentally, the constructors and the recursors provide the only means of defining functions on these types. By the propositions-as-types correspondence, this means that induction is the fundamental method of proof for these types.

Working with induction and recursion is therefore fundamental to working in the Calculus of Inductive Constructions. For that reason Lean provides more natural ways of defining recursive functions, performing pattern matching, and writing inductive proofs. Behind the scenes, these are “compiled” down to recursors, using some of the auxiliary definitions we covered in the previous chapter. Thus, the function definition package, which performs this reduction, is not part of the trusted code base.

7.1 Pattern Matching

The `cases_on` recursor can be used to define functions and prove theorems by cases. But complicated definitions may use several nested `cases_on` applications, and may be hard to read and understand. Pattern matching provides a more convenient and standard way of defining functions and proving theorems. Lean supports a very general form of pattern matching called *dependent pattern matching*. Internally, Lean compiles these definitions down to recursors using the constructions `cases_on`, `no_confusion` and `eq.rec`, described in Section 6.8.

A pattern-matching definition is of the following form:

```
definition [name] [parameters] : [domain] → [codomain]
| [name] [patterns_1] := [value_1]
```

```
...
| [name] [patterns_n] := [value_n]
```

The parameters are fixed, and each assignment defines the value of the function for a different case specified by the given pattern. As a first example, we define the function `sub2` for natural numbers:

```
open nat

definition sub2 : nat → nat
| sub2 0      := 0
| sub2 1      := 0
| sub2 (a+2)  := a

example : sub2 5 = 3 :=
rfl
```

The default compilation method guarantees that the pattern matching equations hold definitionally.

```
example : sub2 0 = 0 :=
rfl

example : sub2 1 = 0 :=
rfl

example (a : nat) : sub2 (a + 2) = a :=
rfl
```

We can use the command `print definition` to inspect how our definition was compiled into recursors.

```
print definition sub2
```

We will say a term is a *constructor application* if it is of the form `c a_1 ... a_n` where `c` is the constructor of some inductive datatype. Note that in the definition `sub2`, the terms `1` and `a+2` are not constructor applications. However, the compiler normalizes them at compilation time, and obtains the constructor applications `succ zero` and `succ (succ a)` respectively. This normalization step is just a simple convenience that allows us to write definitions resembling the ones found in textbooks. Note that, there is no “magic”, the compiler is just using the kernel normalizer/evaluator. If we had written `2+a`, the definition would be rejected since `2+a` does not normalize into a constructor application.

Next, we use pattern-matching for defining Boolean negation `neg`, and proving that `neg (neg b) = b`.

```

open bool

definition neg : bool → bool
| neg tt := ff
| neg ff := tt

theorem neg_neg : ∀ (b : bool), neg (neg b) = b
| neg_neg tt := rfl -- proof for neg (neg tt) = tt
| neg_neg ff := rfl -- proof for neg (neg ff) = ff

```

As described in Chapter 6, Lean inductive datatypes can be parametric. The following example defines the `tail` function using pattern matching. The argument `A : Type` is a parameter and occurs before `:` to indicate it does not participate in the pattern matching. Lean allows parameters to occur after `:`, but it cannot pattern match on them.

```

import data.list
open list

definition tail {A : Type} : list A → list A
| tail nil      := nil
| tail (h :: t) := t

-- Parameter A may occur after ':'
definition tail2 : Π {A : Type}, list A → list A
| tail2 (@nil A) := (@nil A)
| tail2 (h :: t) := t

-- @ is allowed on the left-hand-side
definition tail3 : Π {A : Type}, list A → list A
| @tail3 A nil      := nil
| @tail3 A (h :: t) := t

-- A is explicit parameter
definition tail4 : Π (A : Type), list A → list A
| tail4 A nil      := nil
| tail4 A (h :: t) := t

```

7.2 Structural Recursion and Induction

The function definition package supports structural recursion: recursive applications where one of the arguments is a subterm of the corresponding term on the left-hand-side. Later, we describe how to compile recursive equations using well-founded recursion. The main advantage of the default compilation method is that the recursive equations hold definitionally.

Here are some examples from the last chapter, written in the new style:

```

definition add : nat → nat → nat
| add m 0      := m

```

```

| add m (succ n) := succ (add m n)

infix `+` := add

theorem add_zero (m : nat) : m + 0 = m := rfl
theorem add_succ (m n : nat) : m + succ n = succ (m + n) := rfl

theorem zero_add : ∀n, 0 + n = n
| zero_add 0      := rfl
| zero_add (succ n) := eq.subst (zero_add n) rfl

definition mul : nat → nat → nat
| mul n 0      := 0
| mul n (succ m) := mul n m + m

```

The “definition” of `zero_add` makes it clear that proof by induction is really a form of induction in Lean.

As with definition by pattern matching, parameters to a structural recursion or induction may appear before the colon. Such parameters are simply added to the local context before the definition is processed. For example, the definition of addition may be written as follows:

```

definition add (m : nat) : nat → nat
| add 0      := m
| add (succ n) := succ (add n)

```

This may seem a little odd, but you should read the definition as follows: “Fix `m`, and define the function which adds something to `m` recursively, as follows. To add zero, return `m`. To add the successor of `n`, first add `n`, and then take the successor.” The mechanism for adding parameters to the local context is what makes it possible to process match expressions within terms, as described below.

A more interesting example of structural recursion is given by the Fibonacci function `fib`. The subsequent theorem, `fib_pos`, which combines pattern matching, recursive equations, and calculational proof.

```

import data.nat
open nat

definition fib : nat → nat
| fib 0      := 1
| fib 1      := 1
| fib (a+2) := fib (a+1) + fib a

-- The defining equations hold definitionally

example : fib 0 = 1 :=
rfl

example : fib 1 = 1 :=

```

```

rfl

example (a : nat) : fib (a+2) = fib (a+1) + fib a :=
rfl

-- fib is always positive
theorem fib_pos : ∀ n, 0 < fib n
| fib_pos 0      := show 0 < 1, from zero_lt_succ 0
| fib_pos 1      := show 0 < 1, from zero_lt_succ 0
| fib_pos (a+2) := calc
  0 = 0 + 0      : rfl
... < fib (a+1) + 0 : add_lt_add_right (fib_pos (a+1)) 0
... < fib (a+1) + fib a : add_lt_add_left (fib_pos a) (fib (a+1))
... = fib (a+2)   : rfl

```

Another classic example is the list append function.

```

import data.list
open list

definition append {A : Type} : list A → list A → list A
| append nil    l := l
| append (h::t) l := h :: append t l

example : append [1, 2, 3] [4, 5] = [1, 2, 3, 4, 5] :=
rfl

```

7.3 Dependent Pattern-Matching

All the examples we have seen so far can be easily written using `cases_on` and `rec_on`. However, this is not the case with indexed inductive families, such as `vector A n`. A lot of boilerplate code needs to be written to define very simple functions such as `map`, `zip`, and `unzip` using recursors.

To understand the difficulty, consider what it would take to define a function `tail` which takes a vector `v : vector A (succ n)` and deletes the first element. A first thought might be to use the `cases_on` function:

```

open nat

inductive vector (A : Type) : nat → Type :=
| nil {} : vector A zero
| cons   : Π {n}, A → vector A n → vector A (succ n)

open vector
notation h :: t := cons h t

check @vector.cases_on
-- Π {A : Type}
-- {C : Π (a : ℕ), vector A a → Type}
-- {a : ℕ}

```

```
-- (n : vector A a),
-- (e1 : C 0 nil)
-- (e2 :  $\prod \{n : \mathbb{N}\} (a : A) (a_1 : \text{vector } A \ n), C (\text{succ } n) (\text{cons } a \ a_1))$ ,
-- C a n
```

But what value should we return in the `nil` case? Something funny is going on: if `v` has type `vector A (succ n)`, it *can't* be `nil`, but it is not clear how to tell that to `cases_on`.

A standard solution is to define an auxiliary function:

```
definition tail_aux {A : Type} {n m : nat} (v : vector A m) :
  m = succ n → vector A n :=
vector.cases_on v
  (assume H : 0 = succ n, nat.no_confusion H)
  (take m (a : A) w : vector A m,
    assume H : succ m = succ n,
      have H1 : m = n, from succ_inj H,
      eq.rec_on H1 w)

definition tail {A : Type} {n : nat} (v : vector A (succ n)) : vector A n :=
tail_aux v rfl
```

In the `nil` case, `m` is instantiated to 0, and `no_confusion` (discussed in Section 6.8) makes use of the fact that `0 = succ n` cannot occur. Otherwise, `v` is of the form `a :: w`, and we can simply return `w`, after casting it from a vector of length `m` to a vector of length `n`.

The difficulty in defining `tail` is to maintain the relationships between the indices. The hypothesis `e : m = succ n` in `tail_aux` is used to “communicate” the relationship between `n` and the index associated with the minor premise. Moreover, the `zero = succ n` case is “unreachable”, and the standard way to discard such a case is to use `no_confusion`.

The `tail` function is, however, easy to define using recursive equations, and the function definition package generates all the boilerplate code automatically for us. Here are a number of examples:

```
definition head {A : Type} :  $\prod \{n\}, \text{vector } A \ (\text{succ } n) \rightarrow A$ 
| head (h :: t) := h

definition tail {A : Type} :  $\prod \{n\}, \text{vector } A \ (\text{succ } n) \rightarrow \text{vector } A \ n$ 
| tail (h :: t) := t

theorem eta {A : Type} :  $\forall \{n\} (v : \text{vector } A \ (\text{succ } n)), \text{head } v :: \text{tail } v = v$ 
| eta (h::t) := rfl

definition map {A B C : Type} (f : A → B → C)
  :  $\prod \{n : \text{nat}\}, \text{vector } A \ n \rightarrow \text{vector } B \ n \rightarrow \text{vector } C \ n$ 
| map nil nil := nil
| map (a::va) (b::vb) := f a b :: map va vb

-- The automatically generated definitions for indexed families are not straightforward
print definition map
```

```

definition zip {A B : Type} :  $\Pi$  {n}, vector A n  $\rightarrow$  vector B n  $\rightarrow$  vector (A  $\times$  B) n
| zip nil nil           := nil
| zip (a::va) (b::vb) := (a, b) :: zip va vb

```

Note that we can omit recursive equations for “unreachable” cases such as `head nil`.

The `map` function is even more tedious to define by hand than the `tail` function. We encourage you to try it, using `rec_on`, `cases_on` and `no_confusion`.

7.4 Variations on Pattern Matching

We say a set of recursive equations *overlap* when there is an input that more than one left-hand-side can match. In the following definition the input `0 0` matches the left-hand-side of the first two equations. Should the function return `1` or `2`?

```

definition f : nat  $\rightarrow$  nat  $\rightarrow$  nat
| f 0    y    := 1
| f x    0    := 2
| f (x+1) (y+1) := 3

```

Overlapping patterns are often used to succinctly express complex patterns in data, and they are allowed in Lean. Lean eliminates the ambiguity by using the first applicable equation. In the example above, the following equations hold definitionally:

```

variables (a b : nat)
example : f 0    0    = 1 := rfl
example : f 0    (a+1) = 1 := rfl
example : f (a+1) 0    = 2 := rfl
example : f (a+1) (b+1) = 3 := rfl

```

Lean also supports *wildcard patterns*, also known as *anonymous variables*. They are used to create patterns where we don’t care about the value of a specific argument. In the function `f` defined above, the values of `x` and `y` are not used in the right-hand-side. Here is the same example using wildcards:

```

open nat
definition f : nat  $\rightarrow$  nat  $\rightarrow$  nat
| f 0  _ := 1
| f _  0 := 2
| f _  _ := 3
variables (a b : nat)
example : f 0    0    = 1 := rfl
example : f 0    (a+1) = 1 := rfl
example : f (a+1) 0    = 2 := rfl
example : f (a+1) (b+1) = 3 := rfl

```

Some functional languages support *incomplete patterns*. In these languages, the interpreter produces an exception or returns an arbitrary value for incomplete cases. We can simulate the arbitrary value approach using inhabited types. An element of `inhabited A` is simply a witness to the fact that there is an element of `A`. In Chapter 9, we will see that `inhabited` is an instance of a `type class`: Lean can be instructed that suitable base types are inhabited, and can automatically infer that other constructed types are inhabited on that basis. The standard library provides the opaque definition `arbitrary A` for inhabited types. The function `arbitrary A` returns a witness for `A`, but since the definition of `arbitrary` is opaque, we cannot infer anything about the witness chosen.

We can also use the type `option A` to simulate incomplete patterns. The idea is to return `some a` for the provided patterns, and use `none` for the incomplete cases. The following example demonstrates both approaches.

```
open nat option

definition f1 : nat → nat → nat
| f1 0 _ := 1
| f1 _ 0 := 2
| f1 _ _ := arbitrary nat -- "incomplete" case

variables (a b : nat)
example : f1 0 0 = 1 := rfl
example : f1 0 (a+1) = 1 := rfl
example : f1 (a+1) 0 = 2 := rfl
example : f1 (a+1) (b+1) = arbitrary nat := rfl

definition f2 : nat → nat → option nat
| f2 0 _ := some 1
| f2 _ 0 := some 2
| f2 _ _ := none -- "incomplete" case

example : f2 0 0 = some 1 := rfl
example : f2 0 (a+1) = some 1 := rfl
example : f2 (a+1) 0 = some 2 := rfl
example : f2 (a+1) (b+1) = none := rfl
```

7.5 Inaccessible Terms

Another complication in dependent pattern matching is that some parts require constructor matching, and others are just report specialization. Lean allows users to mark subterms are *inaccessible* for pattern matching. These annotations are essential, for example, when a term occurring in the left-hand-side is neither a variable nor a constructor application. We can view inaccessible terms as “don’t care” patterns.

An inaccessible subterm can be declared using one of the following two notations: `⌊t⌋` or `?(t)`. The unicode version is input by entering `\c1l` (corner-lower-left) and `\c1r` (corner-lower-right).

The following example can be found in [3]. We declare an inductive type that defines the property of “being in the image of f ”. Then, we equip f with an “inverse” which takes anything in the image of f to an element that is mapped to it. The typing rules forces us to write $f\ a$ for the first argument, this term is not a variable nor a constructor application. We can view elements of the type `image_of f b` as evidence that b is in the image of f . The constructor `imf` is used to build such evidence.

```
variables {A B : Type}
inductive image_of (f : A → B) : B → Type :=
imf : Π a, image_of f (f a)

open image_of

definition inv {f : A → B} : Π b, image_of f b → A
| inv (imf a) := a
```

Inaccessible terms can also be used to reduce the complexity of the generated definition. Dependent pattern matching is compiled using the `cases_on` and `no_confusion` constructions. The number of instances of `cases_on` introduced by the compiler can be reduced by marking parts that only report specialization. In the next example, we define the type of finite ordinals `fin n`, this type has n inhabitants. We also define the function `to_nat` that maps a `fin n` into a `nat`. If we do not mark `n+1` as inaccessible, the compiler will generate a definition containing two `cases_on` expressions. We encourage you to replace `⌊n+1⌋` with `(n+1)` in the next example and inspect the generated definition using `print definition to_nat`.

```
open nat

inductive fin : nat → Type :=
| fz : Π n, fin (succ n)
| fs : Π {n}, fin n → fin (succ n)

open fin

definition to_nat : Π {n : nat}, fin n → nat
| @to_nat ⌊n+1⌋ (fz n) := zero
| @to_nat ⌊n+1⌋ (fs f) := succ (to_nat f)
```

7.6 Match Expressions

Lean also provides a compiler for *match-with* expressions found in many functional languages. It uses essentially the same infrastructure used to compile recursive equations.

```
definition is_not_zero (a : nat) : bool :=
match a with
```

```

| zero   := ff
| succ _ := tt
end

-- We can use recursive equations and match
variable {A : Type}
variable p : A → bool

definition filter : list A → list A
| filter nil      := nil
| filter (a :: l) :=
  match p a with
  | tt := a :: filter l
  | ff := filter l
  end

example : filter is_not_zero [1, 0, 0, 3, 0] = [1, 3] :=
rfl

```

You can also use pattern matching in a local **have** expression:

```

import data.nat logic
open bool nat

definition mult : nat → nat → nat :=
have plus : nat → nat → nat :=
| 0      b := b
| (succ a) b := succ (plus a b),
have mult : nat → nat → nat
| 0      b := 0
| (succ a) b := plus (mult a b) b,
mult

```

7.7 Other Examples

In some definitions, we have to help the compiler by providing some implicit arguments explicitly in the left-hand-side of recursive equations. If we don't provide the implicit arguments, the elaborator is unable to solve some placeholders (aka meta-variables) in the nested match expression.

```

variables {A B : Type}
definition unzip : Π {n : nat}, vector (A × B) n → vector A n × vector B n
| @unzip zero    nil      := (nil, nil)
| @unzip (succ n) ((a, b)::v) :=
  match unzip v with
  (va, vb) := (a :: va, b :: vb)
  end

example : unzip ((1, 10) :: (2, 20) :: nil) = (1 :: 2 :: nil, 10 :: 20 :: nil) :=
rfl

```

The name of the function being defined can be omitted in the left-hand-side of pattern matching equations. This feature is particularly useful when the function name is long and/or there are multiple cases. When the name is omitted, Lean will silently include `@f` in the left-hand-side of every pattern matching equation, where `f` is not the name of the function being defined. Here is a small example:

```
variables {A B : Type}
definition unzip :  $\prod \{n : \text{nat}\}, \text{vector } (A \times B) \ n \rightarrow \text{vector } A \ n \times \text{vector } B \ n$ 
| zero    nil      := (nil, nil)
| (succ n) ((a, b)::v) :=
  match unzip v with
  (va, vb) := (a :: va, b :: vb)
end

example : unzip ((1, 10) :: (2, 20) :: nil) = (1 :: 2 :: nil, 10 :: 20 :: nil) :=
rfl
```

Next, we define the function `diag` which extracts the diagonal of a square matrix `vector (vector A n) n`. Note that, this function is defined by structural induction. However, the term `map tail v` is not a subterm of `((a :: va) :: v)`. Could you explain what is going on?

```
variables {A B : Type}

definition tail :  $\prod \{n\}, \text{vector } A \ (\text{succ } n) \rightarrow \text{vector } A \ n$ 
| tail (h :: t) := t

definition map (f : A  $\rightarrow$  B)
  :  $\prod \{n : \text{nat}\}, \text{vector } A \ n \rightarrow \text{vector } B \ n$ 
| map nil      := nil
| map (a::va) := f a :: map va

definition diag :  $\prod \{n : \text{nat}\}, \text{vector } (\text{vector } A \ n) \ n \rightarrow \text{vector } A \ n$ 
| diag nil      := nil
| diag ((a :: va) :: v) := a :: diag (map tail v)
```

7.8 Well-Founded Recursion

[TODO: write this section.]

Building Theories and Proofs

In this chapter, we return to a discussion of some of the pragmatic features of Lean that support the development of structured theories and proofs.

8.1 More on Coercions

In Section 5.7, we discussed coercions briefly, and noted that there are restrictions on the types that one can coerce from and to. Now that we have discussed inductive types, we can be more precise.

The most basic type of coercion maps elements of one type to another. For example, a coercion from `nat` to `int` allows us to view any element `n : nat` as an element of `int`. But some coercions depend on parameters; for example, for any type `A`, we can view any element `l : list A` as an element of `set A`, namely, the set of elements occurring in the list. The corresponding coercion is defined on the “family” of types `list A`, parameterized by `A`.

In fact, Lean allows us to declare three kinds of coercions:

- from a family of types to another family of types
- from a family of types to the class of sorts
- from a family of types to the class of function types

The first kind of coercion allows us to view any element of a member of the source family as an element of a corresponding member of the target family. The second kind of coercion allows us to view any element of a member of the source family as a type. The third kind of

coercion allows us to view any element of the source family as a function. Let us consider each of these in turn.

In type theory terminology, an element $F : \prod x_1 : A_1, \dots, x_n : A_n, \text{Type}$ is called a *family of types*. For every sequence of arguments $a_1 : A_1, \dots, a_n : A_n$, $F\ a_1 \dots a_n$ is a type, so we think of F as being a family parameterized by these arguments. A coercion of the first kind is of the form

$$c : \prod x_1 : A_1, \dots, x_n : A_n, y : F\ x_1 \dots x_n, G\ b_1 \dots b_m$$

where G is another family of types, and the terms $b_1 \dots b_m$ depend on x_1, \dots, x_n, y . This allows us to write $f\ t$ where t is of type $F\ a_1 \dots a_n$ but f expects an argument of type $G\ y_1 \dots y_m$, for some $y_1 \dots y_m$. For example, if F is `list : $\Pi A : \text{Type}, \text{Type}$` , G is `set $\Pi A : \text{Type}, \text{Type}$` , then a coercion $c : \Pi A : \text{Type}, \text{list } A \rightarrow \text{set } A$ allows us to pass an argument of type `list T` for some T any time an element of type `set T` is expected. These are the types of coercions we considered in Section 5.7.

Lean imposes the restriction that the source and target families have to be families of inductive types, as defined in Chapter [Inductive Types](#). Note that these include parameterized structures, as discussed in the next chapter. Because inductive types are atomic — they do not unfold, definitionally, to other expressions — this reduces ambiguity and makes it easier for Lean’s elaborator to determine when to consider a coercion. This restriction turns out to be mild in practice: most natural sources and targets for coercions are defined as inductive types, and any type T can be “wrapped” as an inductive type, by writing `inductive foo (T : Type) := mk : T → foo`.

Let us now consider the second kind of coercion. By the *class of sorts*, we mean the collection of universes `Type.{i}`. A coercion of the second kind is of the form

$$c : \prod x_1 : A_1, \dots, x_n : A_n, F\ x_1 \dots x_n \rightarrow \text{Type}$$

where F is a family of types as above. This allows us to write $s : t$ whenever t is of type $F\ a_1 \dots a_n$. In other words, the coercion allows us to view the elements of $F\ a_1 \dots a_n$ as types. We will see in a later chapter that this is very useful when defining algebraic structures in which one component, the carrier of the structure, is a `Type`. For example, we can define a semigroup as follows:

```
structure Semigroup : Type :=
  (carrier : Type)
  (mul : carrier → carrier → carrier)
  (mul_assoc : ∀ a b c : carrier, mul (mul a b) c = mul a (mul b c))

notation a `*` b := Semigroup.mul _ a b
```

In other words, a semigroup consists of a type, `carrier`, and a multiplication, `mul`, with the property that the multiplication is associative. The `notation` command allows us to write `a * b` instead of `Semigroup.mul S a b` whenever we have `a b : carrier S`; notice that Lean can infer the argument `S` from the types of `a` and `b`. The function `Semigroup.carrier` maps the class `Semigroup` to the sort `Type`:

```
check Semigroup.carrier
```

If we declare this function to be a coercion, then whenever we have a semigroup `S : Semigroup`, we can write `a : S` instead of `a : Semigroup.carrier S`:

```
attribute Semigroup.carrier [coercion]

example (S : Semigroup) (a b : S) : a * b * a = a * (b * a) :=
!Semigroup.mul_assoc
```

It is the coercion that makes it possible to write `(a b : S)`.

By the *class of function types*, we mean the collection of Pi types $\Pi z : B, C$. The third kind of coercion has the form

```
c :  $\Pi x_1 : A_1, \dots, x_n : A_n, y : F x_1 \dots x_n, \Pi z : B, C$ 
```

where `F` is again a family of types and `B` and `C` can depend on `x1, ..., xn, y`. This makes it possible to write `t s` whenever `t` is an element of `F a1 ... an`. In other words, the coercion enables us to view elements of `F a1 ... an` as functions. Continuing the example above, we can define the notion of a morphism between semigroups:

```
structure morphism (S1 S2 : Semigroup) : Type :=
(mor : S1 → S2)
(resp_mul :  $\forall a b : S1, \text{mor } (a * b) = (\text{mor } a) * (\text{mor } b)$ )
```

In other words, a morphism from `S1` to `S2` is a function from the carrier of `S1` to the carrier of `S2` (note the implicit coercion) that respects the multiplication. The projection `morphism.mor` takes a morphism to the underlying function:

```
check morphism.mor
```

As a result, it is a prime candidate for the third type of coercion.

```

attribute morphism.mor [coercion]

example (S1 S2 : Semigroup) (f : morphism S1 S2) (a : S1) :
  f (a * a * a) = f a * f a * f a :=
calc
  f (a * a * a) = f (a * a) * f a : morphism.resp_mul f
  ... = f a * f a * f a : morphism.resp_mul f

```

With the coercion in place, we can write `f (a * a * a)` instead of `morphism.mor f (a * a * a)`. When the `morphism, f`, is used where a function is expected, Lean inserts the coercion.

Remember that you can create a coercion whose scope is limited to the current namespace or section using the `local` modifier:

```

local attribute morphism.mor [coercion]

```

You can also declare a persistent coercion by assigning the attribute when you define the function initially, as described in Section 5.7. Coercions that are defined in a namespace “live” in that namespace, and are made active when the namespace is opened. If you want a coercion to be active as soon as a module is imported, be sure to declare it at the “top level”, i.e. outside any namespace.

Remember also that you can instruct Lean’s pretty-printer to show coercions with `set_option`, and you can print all the coercions in the environment using `print coercions`:

```

theorem test (S1 S2 : Semigroup) (f : morphism S1 S2) (a : S1) :
  f (a * a * a) = f a * f a * f a :=
calc
  f (a * a * a) = f (a * a) * f a : morphism.resp_mul f
  ... = f a * f a * f a : morphism.resp_mul f

set_option pp.coercions true
check test

print coercions

```

Lean will also chain coercions as necessary. You can think of the coercion declarations as forming a directed graph where the nodes are families of types and the edges are the coercions between them. More precisely, each node is either a family of types, or the class of sorts, of the class of function types. The latter two are sinks in the graph. Internally, Lean automatically computes the transitive closure of this graph, in which the “paths” correspond to chains of coercions.

8.2 More on Implicit Arguments

In Section 2.8, we discussed implicit arguments in Lean. For example if a term t has type $\Pi\{x : A\}, P\ x$, the variable x is *implicit* in t . This means that whenever you write t , a “hole” is inserted, so t is replaced by $@t _$. If you don’t want that a hole is inserted, you can write $@t$.

Dual to $@t$ is the exclamation mark $!t$. This will insert underscores for explicit arguments of a term. Look at the resulting terms of the following definitions to see this in action:

```

definition foo (n m k l : ℕ) : (n - m) * (k + 1) = (k + 1) * (n - m) := !mul.comm
print definition foo

definition foo2 (n m k l : ℕ) : (n + k) + 1 = (k + 1) + n := !add.assoc · !add.comm
print definition foo2

definition foo3 (l : ℕ) (H : ∀(n : ℕ), 1 + 2 ≠ 2 * (n + 1)) (n : ℕ) : 1 ≠ 2 * n :=
assume K : 1 = 2 * n,
absurd (show 1 + 2 = 2 * n + 2, from K ► rfl) !H
print definition foo3

```

In the last example we use a neat trick. To show that $1 + 2 = 2 * n + 2$ we take the reflexivity proof $rfl : 1 + 2 = 1 + 2$ and then substitute $2 * n$ for the second 1 to show that $1 + 2 = 2 * n + 2$.

However, $!t$ doesn’t insert all explicit arguments of t . It only inserts the arguments which can either be inferred from later arguments, or from the type of the codomain.

```

variables (P : Π(n m : ℕ) (v : vector bool n) (w : vector bool m), Type)
          (p : Π(n m : ℕ) (v : vector bool n) (w : vector bool m), P n m v w)
          (n m : ℕ) (v : vector bool n) (w : vector bool m)
eval (!p : P n m v w)
eval (!p : P n n v v)
check !p

eval (!P v w : Type)
eval (!p : !P w v)

```

In this example we declare P and p without implicit arguments. However, we can use an exclamation mark to insert some of the implicit arguments. If we write $!p$ this will insert underscores for all explicit arguments of p . This is the case because all holes in $p _ _ _$ can be inferred from its type $P\ n\ m\ v\ w$. Hence in the first `eval`, $!p$ means $p\ n\ m\ v\ w$. This works the same way in the second example. In the third line, the arguments of p are inserted, but cannot be inferred. Hence there are still metavariables in the output.

For P this works differently: if we know that the type of $P _ _ _$ is `Type`, we don’t have enough information to fill any of the holes. However, we can fill the first two holes if

we are given the last two arguments. That is why in `!P` only the first two arguments are filled in. Then `!P v w` is interpreted as `P _ _ v w`, and from this we can infer that the holes must be `n` and `m`, respectively.

Here are some examples to see this behavior in practice.

```
check @add_lt_add_right

definition foo (n m k : ℕ) (H : n < m) : n + k < m + k := !(add_lt_add_right H)

example {n m k l : ℕ} (H : n < m) (K : m + 1 < k + 1) : n < k + 1 :=
calc
  n ≤ n + 1 : !le_add_right
  ... < m + 1 : !foo H
  ... < k + 1 : K
```

In the following example we show that a reflexive euclidean relation is both symmetric and transitive. Notice that we set the variable `R` to be an explicit argument of `reflexive`, `symmetric`, `transitive` and `euclidean`. However, for the theorems it is more convenient to make `R` implicit. We can do this with the command `variable {R}`, which makes `R` implicit from that point on.

```
variables {A : Type} (R : A → A → Prop)

definition reflexive  : Prop := ∀ (a : A), R a a
definition symmetric : Prop := ∀ {a b : A}, R a b → R b a
definition transitive : Prop := ∀ {a b c : A}, R a b → R b c → R a c
definition euclidean  : Prop := ∀ {a b c : A}, R a b → R a c → R b c

variable {R}

theorem th1 (refl : reflexive R) (eucl : euclidean R) : symmetric R :=
take a b : A, assume (H : R a b),
show R b a, from eucl H !refl

theorem th2 (symm : symmetric R) (eucl : euclidean R) : transitive R :=
take (a b c : A), assume (H : R a b) (K : R b c),
have H' : R b a, from symm H,
show R a c, from eucl H' K

-- ERROR:
/-
  theorem th3 (refl : reflexive R) (eucl : euclidean R) : transitive R :=
    th2 (th1 refl eucl) eucl
-/

theorem th3 (refl : reflexive R) (eucl : euclidean R) : transitive R :=
@th2 _ _ (@th1 _ _ @refl @eucl) @eucl
```

However, when we want to combine `th1` and `th2` into `th3` we notice something funny. If we just write the proof `th2 (th1 refl eucl) eucl` we get an error. The reason is that

`eucl` has type $\forall \{a\ b\ c : A\}, R\ a\ b \rightarrow R\ a\ c \rightarrow R\ b\ c$, hence `eucl` is interpreted as `@eucl _ _ _`. Similarly, the types of `th1` and `th2` start with a quantification over implicit arguments, hence they are interpreted as `th1 _ _` and `th2 _ _`, respectively. We can solve this by writing `@eucl`, `@th1` and `@th2`, but this is very inconvenient.

We can solve this by using the binders `{|}` instead of `{}`.

```

definition symmetric : Prop :=  $\forall \{a\ b : A\}, R\ a\ b \rightarrow R\ b\ a$ 
definition transitive : Prop :=  $\forall \{a\ b\ c : A\}, R\ a\ b \rightarrow R\ b\ c \rightarrow R\ a\ c$ 
definition euclidean : Prop :=  $\forall \{a\ b\ c : A\}, R\ a\ b \rightarrow R\ a\ c \rightarrow R\ b\ c$ 

```

They are inserted by typing `\{ {` and `\} }`. Alternatively you can use the equivalent notation `{ { }`. The arguments in these binders are still implicit, however, they are not inserted to a term `t` if `t` is not applied to anything. So if `H : symmetric R`, i.e. `H : $\forall \{a\ b : A\}, R\ a\ b \rightarrow R\ b\ a$` , then `H` is interpreted as `@H`, but `H p` is interpreted as `@H _ _ p`. This allows us to prove `th3` in the expected way.

```

theorem th3 (refl : reflexive R) (eucl : euclidean R) : transitive R :=
th2 (th1 refl eucl) eucl

```

There is a third kind of implicit argument, used for type classes: `[]`. We will explain these in [Chapter 9](#).

8.3 Elaboration and Unification

When you enter an expression like `$\lambda x\ y\ z, f\ (x + y)\ z$` for Lean to process, you are leaving information implicit. For example, the types of `x`, `y`, and `z` have to be inferred from the context, the notation `+` may be overloaded, and there may be implicit arguments to `f` that need to be filled in as well.

The process of taking a partially-specified expression and inferring what is left implicit is known as *elaboration*. Lean’s elaboration algorithm is powerful, but at the same time, subtle and complex. Working in a system of dependent type theory requires knowing what sorts of information the elaborator can reliably infer, as well as knowing how to respond to error messages that are raised when the elaborator fails. To that end, it is helpful to have a general idea of how Lean’s elaborator works.

When Lean is parsing an expression, it first enters a preprocessing phase. First, Lean inserts “holes” for implicit arguments. If term `t` has type $\Pi\{x : A\}, P\ x$, then `t` is replaced by `@t _` everywhere. Then, the holes — either the ones inserted in the previous step or the ones explicitly written by the user — in a term are instantiated by *metavariables* `?M1`, `?M2`, `?M3`, `...`. Each overloaded notation is associated with a list of choices, that is, the possible interpretations. Similarly, Lean tries to detect the points where a coercion may need to be inserted in an application `s t`, to make the inferred type of `t` match

the argument type of s . These become choice points too. If one possible outcome of the elaboration procedure is that no coercion is needed, then one of the choices on the list is the identity.

After preprocessing, Lean extracts a list of constraints that need to be solved in order for the term to have a valid type. Each application term $s \ t$ gives rise to a constraint $T1 = T2$, where t has type $T1$ and s has type $\Pi x : T2, T3$. Notice that the expressions $T1$ and $T2$ will often contain metavariables; they may even be metavariables themselves. Moreover, a definition of the form `definition foo : T := t` or a theorem of the form `theorem bar : T := t` generates the constraint that the inferred type of t should be T .

The elaborator now has a straightforward task: find expressions to substitute for all the metavariables so that all of the constraints are simultaneously satisfied. An assignment of terms to metavariables is known as a *substitution*, and the general task of finding a substitution that makes two expressions coincide is known as a *unification* problem. (If only one of the expressions contains metavariables, the task is a special case known as a *matching* problem.)

Some constraints are straightforwardly handled. If f and g are distinct constants, it is clear that there is no way to unify the terms $f \ s_1 \ \dots \ s_m$ and $g \ t_1 \ \dots \ t_n$. On the other hand, one can unify $f \ s_1 \ \dots \ s_m$ and $f \ t_1 \ \dots \ t_m$ by unifying s_1 with t_1 , s_2 with t_2 , and so on. If $?M$ is a metavariable, one can unify $?M$ with any term t simply by assigning t to $?M$. These are all aspects of *first-order* unification, and such constraints are solved first.

In contrast, *higher-order* unification is much more tricky. Consider, for example, the expressions $?M \ a \ b$ and $f \ (g \ a) \ b \ b$. All of the following assignments to $?M$ are among the possible solutions:

- $\lambda x \ y, f \ (g \ x) \ y \ y$
- $\lambda x \ y, f \ (g \ x) \ y \ b$
- $\lambda x \ y, f \ (g \ a) \ b \ y$
- $\lambda x \ y, f \ (g \ a) \ b \ b$

Such problems arise in many ways. For example:

- When you use `induction_on x` for an inductively defined type, Lean has to infer the relevant induction predicate.
- When you write `eq.subst e p` with an equation $e : a = b$ to convert a proposition $P \ a$ to a proposition $P \ b$, Lean has to infer the relevant predicate.
- When you write `sigma.mk a b` to build an element of $\Sigma x : A, B \ x$ from an element $a : A$ and an element $B : B \ a$, Lean has to infer the relevant B . (And notice that

there is an ambiguity; `sigma.mk a b` could also denote an element of $\Sigma x : A, B\ a$, which is essentially the same as $A \times B\ a$.)

In cases like this, Lean has to perform a backtracking search to find a suitable value of a higher-order metavariable. It is known that even second-order unification is generally undecidable. The algorithm that Lean uses is not complete (which means that it can fail to find a solution even if one exists) and potentially nonterminating. Nonetheless, it performs quite well in ordinary situations.

Moreover, the elaborator performs a global backtracking search over all the nondeterministic choice points introduced by overloads and coercions. In other words, the elaborator starts by trying to solve the equations with the first choice on each list. Each time the procedure fails, it analyzes the failure, and determines the next viable choice to try.

To complicate matters even further, sometimes the elaborator has to reduce terms using the CIC’s internal computation rules. For example, if it happens to be the case that `f` is defined to be $\lambda x, g\ x\ x$, we can unify expressions `f ?M` and `g a a` by assigning `?M` to `a`. In general, any number of computation steps may be needed to unify terms. It is computationally infeasible to try all possible reductions in the search, so, once again, Lean’s elaborator relies on an incomplete strategy.

The interaction of computation with higher-order unification is particularly knotty. For the most part, Lean avoids performing computational reduction when trying to solve higher-order constraints. You can override this, however, by marking some symbols with the `reducible` attribute, as described in Section 8.5.

The elaborator relies on additional tricks and gadgets to solve a list of constraints and instantiate metavariables. Below we will see that users can specify that some parts of terms should be filled in by *tactics*, which can, in turn, invoke arbitrary automated procedures. In the next chapter, we will discuss the mechanism of `class inference`, which can be configured to execute a prolog-like search for appropriate instantiations of an implicit argument. These can be used to help the elaborator find implicit facts on the fly, such as the fact that a particular set is finite, as well as implicit data, such as a default element of a type, or the appropriate multiplication in an algebraic structure.

It is important to keep in mind that all these mechanisms interact. The elaborator processes its list of constraints, trying to solve the easier ones first, postponing others until more information is available, and branching and backtracking at choice points. Even small proofs can generate hundreds or thousands of constraints. The elaboration process continues until the elaborator fails to solve a constraint and has exhausted all its backtracking options, or until all the constraints are solved. In the first case, it returns an error message which tries to provide the user with helpful information as to where and why it failed. In the second case, the type checker is asked to confirm that the assignment that the elaborator has found does indeed make the term type check. If all the metavariables in the original expression have been assigned, the result is a fully elaborated, type-correct expression. Otherwise, Lean flags the sources of the remaining metavariables as “placeholders”

or “goals” that could not be filled.

8.4 Opaque Definitions

Because elaboration and unification are so complex, Lean provides various mechanism that control the process. To start with, a defined symbol can be *transparent* or *opaque*. This is a very strong, irrevocable decision: when a symbol is opaque, its definition is *never* unfolded, not even by the type checker in the kernel of Lean, whose job it is to determine whether or not a term is type correct.

Any identifier created by the `theorem` command is automatically marked as opaque, as consistent with the understanding is that all we care about is the fact that the theorem is true, which is to say, the proposition is asserts, viewed as a type, is inhabited. (If other theorems and definitions need to “see” the contents of a proof, you must declare it to be a `definition` instead.)

In contrast, an identifier created by the `definition` command is marked as transparent, by default. For example, if addition on the natural numbers were not transparent, the type checker would reject the equation in the check below as a type error:

```
import data.vector data.nat
open nat
check λ (v : vector nat (2+3)) (w : vector nat 5), v = w
```

Similarly, the following definition only type checks because `id` is transparent, and the type checker can establish that `nat` and `id nat` are definitionally equal.

```
import data.nat
definition id {A : Type} (a : A) : A := a
check λ (x : nat) (y : id nat), x = y
```

Lean provides us with an option, however, to declare a definition to be opaque as well. Opaque definitions are similar to regular definitions, but they are only transparent in the module (file) in which they are defined. The idea is that we can prove theorems about an opaque constant in the module in which it is defined, but in other modules, we can only rely on these theorems. The actual definition is hidden/encapsulated, and the module designer is free to change it without affecting its “customers”.

Using opaque definitions is subtle. It would be problematic if the type checker could determine that the statement of a theorem which involves an opaque constant is correct within the module it is defined, but not outside the module. For that reason, an opaque definition is only treated as transparent inside of other opaque definitions/theorems in the same module. Here is an example:

```

import data.nat
opaque definition id {A : Type} (a : A) : A := a

-- these are o.k.

check λ (x : nat) (y : id nat), x = y

theorem id_eq {A : Type} (a : A) : id a = a :=
eq.refl a

definition id2 {A : Type} (a : A) : A :=
id a

-- this is rejected

/-
definition buggy_def {A : Type} (a : A) : Prop :=
∀ (b : id A), a = b
-/

```

The `check` command is type correct because it is executed in the same module as the `opaque` definition. The proof of `id_eq` is type correct, because `id` only needs to be transparent within the proof. Similarly, `id2` is type correct because the type checker does not need to unfold `id` to ensure correctness. But Lean rejects `buggy_def`: the definition would not type check outside the module, because that requires unfolding the definition of `id`.

8.5 Reducible Definitions

Transparent identifiers can be declared to be *reducible* or *irreducible* or *semireducible*. By default, a definition is *semireducible*. Whereas being transparent or opaque is a fixed, irrevocable feature of an identifier, being reducible or irreducible is an attribute that can be altered. This status provides hints that govern the way the elaborator tries to solve higher-order unification problems. As with other attributes, the status of an identifier with respect to reducibility has no bearing on type checking at all, which is to say, once a fully elaborated term is type correct, marking one of the constants it contains to be reducible does not change the correctness. The type checker in the kernel of Lean ignores such attributes, and there is no problem marking a constant reducible at one point, and then irreducible later on, or vice-versa.

The purpose of the annotation is to help Lean’s unification procedure decide which declarations should be unfolded. The higher-order unification procedure has to perform case analysis, implementing a backtracking search. At various stages, the procedure has to decide whether a definition `C` should be unfolded or not.

- An *irreducible* definition will never be unfolded during higher-order unification (but can still be unfolded in other situations, for example during type checking)

- A *reducible* definition will be always eligible for unfolding
- A definition which is *semireducible* can be unfolded during *simple* decisions and won't be unfolded during *complex* decisions. An unfolding decision is *simple* if the unfolding does not require the procedure to consider an extra case split. It is *complex* if the unfolding produces at least one extra case, and consequently increases the search space.

Identifiers which are opaque (theorems and opaque definitions declared in a different module) will never be unfolded. Opaque definitions declared in the current module can be marked to be reducible and irreducible as normal, since they are transparent in the current module.

You can assign the `reducible` attribute when a symbol is defined:

```
definition pr1 [reducible] (A : Type) (a b : A) : A := a
```

The assignment persists to other modules. You can achieve the same result with the `attribute` command:

```
definition id (A : Type) (a : A) : A := a
definition pr2 (A : Type) (a b : A) : A := b

-- mark pr2 as reducible
attribute pr2 [reducible]

-- mark id and pr2 as irreducible
attribute id [irreducible]
attribute pr2 [irreducible]
```

The `local` modifier can be used to instruct Lean to limit the scope to the current namespace or section.

```
definition pr2 (A : Type) (a b : A) : A := b

local attribute pr2 [irreducible]
```

When reducibility hints are declared in a namespace, their scope is restricted to the namespace. In other words, even if you import the module in which the attributes are declared, they do not take effect until the namespace is opened. As with coercions, if you want a reducibility attribute to be set whenever a module is imported, be sure to declare it at the top level. See also Section 8.9 below for more information on how to import only the reducibility attributes, without exposing other aspects of the namespace.

Finally, we can go back to *semireducible* using the `attribute` command:

```

-- pr2 is semireducible
definition pr2 (A : Type) (a b : A) : A := b

-- mark pr2 as reducible
attribute pr2 [reducible]
-- ...
-- make it semireducible again
attribute pr2 [semireducible]

```

8.6 Helping the Elaborator

Because proof terms and expressions in dependent type theory can become quite complex, working in dependent type theory effectively involves relying on the system to fill in details automatically. When the elaborator fails to elaborate a term, there are two possibilities. One possibility is that there is an error in the term, and no solution is possible. In that case, your goal, as the user, is to find the error and correct it. The second possibility is that the term has a valid elaboration, but the elaborator failed to find it. In that case, you have to help the elaborator along by providing information. This section provides some guidance in both situations.

If the error message is not sufficient to allow you to identify the problem, a first strategy is to ask Lean’s pretty printer to show more information, as discussed in Section 5.2, using some or all of the following options:

```

set_option pp.implicit true
set_option pp.universes true
set_option pp.notation false
set_option pp.coercions true
set_option pp.numerals false
set_option pp.full_names true

```

Sometimes, the elaborator will fail with the message that the unifier has exceeded its maximum number of steps. As we noted in the last section, some elaboration problems can lead to nonterminating behavior, and so Lean simply gives up after it has reached a pre-set maximum. You can change this with the `set_option` command:

```

set_option unifier.max_steps 100000

```

This can sometimes help you determine whether there is an error in the term or whether the elaboration problem has simply grown too complex. In the latter case, there are steps you can take to cut down the complexity.

To start with, Lean provides a mechanism to break large elaboration problems down into simpler ones, with a `proof ... qed` block. Here is the sample proof from Section 3.6, with additional `proof ... qed` annotations:

```

example (p q r : Prop) : p ∧ (q ∨ r) ↔ (p ∧ q) ∨ (p ∧ r) :=
iff.intro
  (assume H : p ∧ (q ∨ r),
    show (p ∧ q) ∨ (p ∧ r), from
      proof
        have Hp : p, from and.elim_left H,
        or.elim (and.elim_right H)
          (assume Hq : q,
            show (p ∧ q) ∨ (p ∧ r), from or.inl (and.intro Hp Hq))
          (assume Hr : r,
            show (p ∧ q) ∨ (p ∧ r), from or.inr (and.intro Hp Hr))
        qed)
  (assume H : (p ∧ q) ∨ (p ∧ r),
    show p ∧ (q ∨ r), from
      proof
        or.elim H
          (assume Hpq : p ∧ q,
            have Hp : p, from and.elim_left Hpq,
            have Hq : q, from and.elim_right Hpq,
            show p ∧ (q ∨ r), from and.intro Hp (or.inl Hq))
          (assume Hpr : p ∧ r,
            have Hp : p, from and.elim_left Hpr,
            have Hr : r, from and.elim_right Hpr,
            show p ∧ (q ∨ r), from and.intro Hp (or.inr Hr))
        qed)
  
```

Writing `proof t qed` as a subterm of a larger term breaks up the elaboration problem as follows: first, the elaborator tries to elaborate the surrounding term, independent of `t`. If it succeeds, that solution is used to constrain the type of `t`, and the elaborator processes that term independently. The net result is that a big elaboration problem gets broken down into smaller elaboration problems. This “localizes” the elaboration procedure, which has both positive and negative effects. A disadvantage is that information is insulated, so that the solution to one problem cannot inform the solution to another. The key advantage is that it can simplify the elaborator’s task. For example, backtracking points within a `proof ... qed` do not become backtracking points for the outside term; the elaborator either succeeds or fails to elaborate each independently. As another benefit, error messages are often improved; an error that ultimately stems from an incorrect choice of an overload in one subterm is not “blamed” on another part of the term.

In principle, one can write `proof t qed` for any term `t`, but it is used most effectively following a `have` or `show`, as in the example above. This is because `have` and `show` specify the intended type of the `proof ... qed` block, reducing any ambiguity about the subproblem the elaborator needs to solve.

The use of `proof ... qed` blocks with `have` and `show` illustrates two general strategies that can help the elaborator: first, breaking large problems into smaller problems, and, second, providing additional information. The first strategy can also be achieved by breaking a large definition into smaller definitions, or breaking a theorem with a large proof into auxiliary lemmas. Even breaking up long terms internal to a proof using auxiliary `have`

statements can help locate the source of an error.

The second strategy, providing additional information, can be achieved by using `have`, `show`, `(t : T)` notation, and `#<namespace>` (see Section [Notation, Overloads, and Coercions](#)) to indicate expected types. More directly, it often help to specify the implicit arguments. When Lean cannot solve for the value of a metavariable corresponding to an implicit argument, you can always use `@` to provide that argument explicitly. Doing so will either help the elaborator solve the elaboration problem, or help you find an error in the term that is blocking the intended solution.

In Lean, tactics not only allow us to invoke arbitrary automated procedures, but also provide an alternative approach to construct proofs and terms. For many users, this is one of the most effective mechanisms to help the elaborator. A tactic can be viewed as a “recipe”, a sequence of commands or instructions, that describes how to build a proof. This recipe may be as detailed as we want. A tactic `T` can be embedded into proof terms by writing `by T` or `begin T end`. These annotations instruct Lean that tactic `T` should be invoked to construct the term in the given location. Similarly to `proof ... qed`, the elaborator tries to elaborate the surrounding terms before executing `T`. The expression `proof t qed` is just syntactic sugar for `by exact t`. Later, we will explain the semantics of the tactic `exact t` in detail.

If you are running Lean using Emacs, you can “profile” the elaborator and type checker, to find out where they are spending all their time. Simply type `M-x lean-execute` to run an independent Lean process manually and add the option `--profile=`. The output buffer will then report the times required by the elaborator and type checker, for each definition and theorem processed. If you ever find the system slowing down while processing a file, this can help you locate the source of the problem.

8.7 Making Auxiliary Facts Visible

We have seen that the `have` construct introduces an auxiliary subgoal in a proof, and is useful for structuring and documenting proofs. Given the term `have H : p, from s, t`, by default, the hypothesis `H` is not “visible” by automated procedures and tactics used to construct `t`. This is important because too much information may negatively affect the performance and effectiveness of automated procedures. You can make `H` available to automated procedures and tactics by using the idiom `assert H : p, from s, t`. Here is a small example:

```
example (p q r : Prop) : p ∧ q ∧ r → q ∧ p :=
  assume Hpqr : p ∧ q ∧ r,
  assert Hp   : p,      from and.elim_left Hpqr,
  have  Hqr   : q ∧ r,  from and.elim_right Hpqr,
  assert Hq   : q,      from and.elim_left Hqr,
  proof
    -- Hp and Hq are visible here,
```

```

-- Hqr is not visible because we used "have".
and.intro Hq Hp
qed

```

Recall that `proof ... qed` block is implemented using tactics, so any hypothesis introduced using `have` is invisible inside it. In the example above, `Hqr` is not visible in the `proof ... qed` block.

The `have`, `show` and `assert` terms have a variant which provide even more control over which hypotheses are available in `from s`.

```

have H : p, using H_1 ... H_n, from s, t
assert H : p, using H_1 ... H_n, from s, t
show H : p, using H_1 ... H_n, from s

```

In all three terms, the hypotheses `H_1 ... H_n` are available for automated procedures and tactics used in `s`.

```

example (p q r : Prop) : p ∧ q ∧ r → q ∧ p :=
assume Hpqr : p ∧ q ∧ r,
have Hp : p, from and.elim_left Hpqr,
have Hqr : q ∧ r, from and.elim_right Hpqr,
assert Hq : q, from and.elim_left Hqr,
show q ∧ p, using Hp, from
proof
-- Hp is visible here because of =using Hp=
and.intro Hq Hp
qed

```

See Chapter 11 for a discussion of Lean's tactics.

There are even situations where an auxiliary fact needs to be visible to the elaborator, so that it can solve unification problems that arise. This can arise when the expression to be synthesized depends on an auxiliary fact, `H`. We will see an example of this in a later chapter, when we discuss the Hilbert choice operator.

8.8 Sections

Lean provides various sectioning mechanisms that help structure a theory. We saw in Section 2.6 that the `section` command makes it possible not only to group together elements of a theory that go together, but also to declare variables that are inserted as arguments to theorems and definitions, as necessary. In fact, Lean has two ways of introducing local elements into the sections, namely, as **variables** or as **parameters**.

Remember that the point of the variable command is to declare variables for use in theorems, as in the following example:

```

import standard
open nat

section
  variables x y : ℕ

  definition double := x + x

  check double y
  check double (2 * x)

  theorem t1 : double x = 2 * x :=
  calc
    double x = x + x          : rfl
    ... = 1 * x + x          : one_mul
    ... = 1 * x + 1 * x      : one_mul
    ... = (1 + 1) * x        : mul.right_distrib
    ... = 2 * x              : rfl

  check t1 y
  check t1 (2 * x)

  theorem t2 : double (2 * x) = 4 * x :=
  calc
    double (2 * x) = 2 * (2 * x) : t1
    ... = 2 * 2 * x          : mul.assoc
    ... = 4 * x              : rfl
end

```

The definition of `double` does not have to declare `x` as an argument; Lean detects the dependence and inserts it automatically. Similarly, Lean detects the occurrence of `x` in `t1` and `t2`, and inserts it automatically there, too. Note that `double` does *not* have `y` as argument. Variables are only included in declarations where they are actually mentioned. To force that a variable is included in every definition in a section, use the `include` command. This is useful for type classes, see next chapter.

Notice that the variable `x` is generalized immediately, so that even within the section `double` is a function of `x`, and `t1` and `t2` depend explicitly on `x`. This is what makes it possible to apply `double` and `t1` to other expressions, like `y` and `2 * x`. It corresponds to the ordinary mathematical locution “in this section, let `x` and `y` range over the natural numbers.” Whenever `x` and `y` occur, we assume they denote natural numbers.

Sometimes, however, we wish to *fix* a single value in a section. For example, in an ordinary mathematical text, we might say “in this section, we fix a type, `A`, and a binary relation on `A`.” The notion of a **parameter** captures this usage:

```

import standard

section
  parameters {A : Type} (R : A → A → Type)
  hypothesis transR : ∀ {x y z}, R x y → R y z → R x z

```

```

variables {a b c d e : A}

theorem t1 (H1 : R a b) (H2 : R b c) (H3 : R c d) : R a d :=
  transR (transR H1 H2) H3

theorem t2 (H1 : R a b) (H2 : R b c) (H3 : R c d) (H4 : R d e) :
  R a e :=
  transR H1 (t1 H2 H3 H4)

check t1
check t2
end

check t1
check t2

```

Here, `hypothesis` functions as a synonym for `parameter`, so that `A`, `R`, and `transR` are all parameters in the section. This means that, as before, they are inserted as arguments to definitions and theorems as needed. But there is a difference: within the section, `t1` is an abbreviation for `@t1 A R transR`, which is to say, these arguments are fixed until the section is closed. This means that you do not have to specify the explicit arguments `R` and `transR` when you write `t1 H2 H3 H4`, in contrast to the previous example. But it also means that you cannot specify other arguments in their place. In this example, making `R` a parameter is appropriate if `R` is the only binary relation you want to reason about in the section. If you want to apply your theorems to arbitrary binary relations within the section, make `R` a variable.

Notice that Lean is consistent when it comes to providing alternative syntax for `Prop`-valued variants of declarations:

Type	Prop
constant	axiom
variable	premise
parameter	hypothesis
take	assume

Lean also allows you to use `conjecture` in place of `hypothesis`.

8.9 More on Namespaces

Recall from Section 2.6 that namespaces not only package shorter names for theorems and identifiers, but also things like notation, coercions, classes, rewrite rules, and so on. You can ask Lean to display a list of these “metaclasses”:

```
print metaclasses
```

These can be opened independently using modifiers to the `open` command:

```
import data.nat

open [declarations] nat
open [notations] nat
open [coercions] nat
open [classes] nat
open [abbreviations] nat
open [tactic-hints] nat
open [reduce-hints] nat
```

For example, `open [coercions] nat` makes the coercions in the namespace `nat` available (and nothing else). You can multiple metaclasses on one line:

```
import data.nat

open [declarations] [notations] [coercions] nat
```

You can also open a namespace while /excluding certain metaclasses. For example,

```
import data.nat

open - [notations] [coercions] nat
```

imports all metaclasses but `[notations]` and `[coercions]`. You can limit the scope of an `open` command by putting it in a section. For example,

```
import data.nat

section
  open [notations] nat

  /- ... -/
end
```

imports notation from `nat` only within the section.

You can also import only certain theorems by providing an explicit list in parentheses:

```
import data.nat
open nat (add add.assoc add.comm)

check add
check add.assoc
check add.comm
```

The `open` command above imports all metaobjects from `nat`, but limits the shortened identifiers to the ones listed. If you want to import *only* the shortened identifiers, use the following:

```
import data.nat
open [declarations] nat (add add.assoc add.comm)
```

When you open a section, you can rename identifiers on the fly:

```
import data.nat
open nat (renaming add -> plus)

check plus
```

Or you can *exclude* a list of items from being imported:

```
import data.nat
open nat (hiding add)
```

Within a namespace, you can declare certain identifiers to be **protected**. This means that when the namespace is opened, the short version of these names are not made available:

```
namespace foo
  protected definition bar (A : Type) (x : A) := x
end foo

open foo
check foo.bar -- "check bar" yields an error
```

In the Lean library, this is used for common names. For example, we want to write `nat.rec_on`, `int.rec_on`, and `list.rec_on`, even when all of these namespaces are open, to avoid ambiguity and overloading. You can always define a local abbreviation to use the shorter name:

```
import data.list
open list
local abbreviation induction_on := @list.induction_on
check induction_on
```

Alternatively, you can “unprotect” the definition by renaming it when you open the namespace:

```
import data.list
open list (renaming induction_on → induction_on)
check induction_on
```

As yet a third alternative, you obtain an alias for the shorter name by opening the namespace for that identifier only:

```
import data.list
open list (induction_on)
check induction_on
```

You may find that at times you want to cobble together a namespace, with notation, rewrite rules, or whatever, from existing namespaces. Lean provides an **export** command for that. The **export** command supports the same options and modifiers as the **open** command: when you export to a namespace, aliases for all the items you export become part of the new namespace. For example, below we define a new namespace, **my_namespace**, which includes items from **bool**, **nat**, and **list**.

```
import standard

namespace my_namespace
  export bool (hiding measurable)
  export nat
  export list
end my_namespace

check my_namespace.band
check my_namespace.add
check my_namespace.append

open my_namespace

check band
check add
check append
```

This makes it possible for you to define nicely prepackaged configurations for those who will use your theories later on.

Sometimes it is useful to hide auxiliary definitions and theorems from the outside world, for example, so that they do not clutter up the namespace. The **private** keyword allows you to do this. A private definition is always opaque, and the name of a **private** definition is only visible in the module/file where it was declared.

```
import data.nat
open nat
```

```
private definition inc (x : nat) := x + 1
private theorem inc_eq_succ (x : nat) : succ x = inc x :=
  rfl
```

In this example, the definition `inc` and theorem `inc_eq_succ` are not visible or accessible in modules that import this one.

Type Classes

We have seen that Lean’s elaborator provides helpful automation, filling in information that is tedious to enter by hand. In this section we will explore a simple but powerful technical device known as *type class inference*, which provides yet another mechanism for the elaborator to supply missing information.

The notion of a *type class* originated with the *Haskell* programming language. Many of the original uses carry over, but, as we will see, the realm of interactive theorem proving raises even more possibilities for their use.

9.1 Type Classes and Instances

The basic idea is simple. In Section 8.1, we saw that any family of inductive types can serve as the source or target of a coercion. In much the same way, any family of inductive types can be marked as a *type class*. Then we can declare particular elements of a type class to be *instances*. These provide hints to the elaborator: any time the elaborator is looking for an element of a type class, it can consult a table of declared instances to find a suitable element.

More precisely, there are three steps involved:

- First, we declare a family of inductive types to be a type class.
- Second, we declare instances of the type class.
- Finally, we mark some implicit arguments with square brackets instead of curly brackets, to inform the elaborator that these arguments should be inferred by the type class mechanism.

Here is a somewhat frivolous example:

```
import data.nat
open nat

attribute nat [class]

definition one [instance] :  $\mathbb{N}$  := 1

definition foo [x :  $\mathbb{N}$ ] : nat := x

check @foo
eval foo

example : foo = 1 := rfl
```

Here we declare `nat` to be a class with a “canonical” instance `1`. Then we declare `foo` to be, essentially, the identity function on the natural numbers, but we mark the argument implicit, and indicate that it should be inferred by type class inference. When we write `foo`, the preprocessor interprets it as `foo ?x`, where `?x` is an implicit argument. But when the elaborator gets hold of the expression, it sees that `?x : \mathbb{N}` is supposed to be solved by type class inference. It looks for a suitable element of the class, and it finds the instance `one`. Thus, when we evaluate `foo`, we simply get `1`.

It is tempting to think of `foo` as defined to be equal to `1`, but that is misleading. Every time we write `foo`, the elaborator searches for a value. If we declare other instances of the class, that can change the value that is assigned to the implicit argument. This can result in seemingly paradoxical behavior. For example, we might continue the development above as follows:

```
definition two [instance] :  $\mathbb{N}$  := 2

eval foo

example : foo  $\neq$  1 := dec_trivial
```

Now the “same” expression `foo` evaluates to `2`. Whereas before we could prove `foo = 1`, now we can prove `foo \neq 1`, because the inferred implicit argument has changed. When searching for a suitable instance of a type class, the elaborator tries the most recent instance declaration first, by default. We will see below, however, that it is possible to give individual instances higher or lower priority. The proof `dec_trivial` will be explained below.

As with `coercion` and other attributes, you can assign the `class` or `instance` attributes in a definition, or after the fact, with an `attribute` command. As usual, the assignments `attribute foo [class]` and `attribute foo [instance]` are only operant in the current namespace, but the assignments persist on import. To limit the scope of an assignment to the current file, use the `local attribute` variant.

The reason the example is frivolous is that there is rarely a need to “infer” a natural number; we can just hard-code the choice of 1 or 2 into the definition of `foo`. Type classes become useful when they depend on parameters, in which case, the value that is inferred depends on these parameters.

Let us work through a simple example. Many theorems hold under the additional assumption that a type is inhabited, which is to say, it has at least one element. For example, if A is a type, $\exists x : A, x = x$ is true only if A is inhabited. Similarly, it often happens that we would like a definition to return a default element in a “corner case.” For example, we would like the expression `head l` to be of type A when l is of type `list A`; but then we are faced with the problem that `head l` needs to return an “arbitrary” element of A in the case where l is the empty list, `nil`.

For purposes like this, the standard library defines a type class `inhabited` : `Type` \rightarrow `Type`, to enable type class inference to infer a “default” or “arbitrary” element of an inhabited type. We will carry out a similar development in the examples that follow, using a namespace `hide` to avoid conflicting with the definitions in the standard library.

Let us start with the first step of the program above, declaring an appropriate class:

```
namespace hide

inductive inhabited [class] (A : Type) : Type :=
mk : A  $\rightarrow$  inhabited A

end hide
```

An element of the class `inhabited A` is simply an expression of the form `inhabited.mk a`, for some element $a : A$. The eliminator for the inductive type will allow us to “extract” such an element of A from an element of `inhabited A`.

The second step of the program is to populate the class with some instances:

```
definition Prop.is_inhabited [instance] : inhabited Prop :=
inhabited.mk true

definition bool.is_inhabited [instance] : inhabited bool :=
inhabited.mk bool.tt

definition nat.is_inhabited [instance] : inhabited nat :=
inhabited.mk nat.zero

definition unit.is_inhabited [instance] : inhabited unit :=
inhabited.mk unit.star
```

This arranges things so that when type class inference is asked to infer an element $?M : \text{Prop}$, it can find the element `true` to assign to $?M$, and similarly for the elements `tt`, `zero`, and `star` of the types `bool`, `nat`, and `unit`, respectively.

The final step of the program is to define a function that infers an element $H : \text{inhabited } A$ and puts it to good use. The following function simply extracts the corresponding element $a : A$:

```
definition default (A : Type) [H : inhabited A] : A :=
inhabited.rec (λa, a) H
```

This has the effect that given a type expression A , whenever we write `default A`, we are really writing `default A ?H`, leaving the elaborator to find a suitable value for the metavariable `?H`. When the elaborator succeeds in finding such a value, it has effectively produced an element of type A , as though by magic.

```
check default Prop    -- Prop
check default nat     -- N
check default bool    -- bool
check default unit    -- unit
```

In general, whenever we write `default A`, we are asking the elaborator to synthesize an element of type A .

Notice that we can “see” the value that is synthesized with `eval`:

```
eval default Prop    -- true
eval default nat     -- nat.zero
eval default bool    -- bool.tt
eval default unit    -- unit.star
```

We can also codify these choices as theorems:

```
example : default Prop = true := rfl
example : default nat = nat.zero := rfl
example : default bool = bool.tt := rfl
example : default unit = unit.star := rfl
```

For some applications, we may want type class inference to infer an *arbitrary* element of a type, in such a way that our theorems and definitions can make use of the fact that it is an element of that type but cannot assume anything about the specific element that has been inferred. To that end, the standard library defines a function `arbitrary`. It has exactly the same definition as `default`, but it is marked opaque.

```
opaque definition arbitrary (A : Type) [H : inhabited A] : A :=
inhabited.rec (λa, a) H
```

As a result, you can now write proofs that assume the existence of an element of some type. The “arbitrary” element is really arbitrary; from your point of view, it acts as an uninterpreted constant.

```

theorem exists_eq_of_inhabited (A : Type) [H : inhabited A] :
  ∃x : A, x = x :=
exists.intro (arbitrary A) rfl

example : ∃x : nat, x = x := exists_eq_of_inhabited nat

```

Recall that `opaque` constants are treated as transparent when type checking other `opaque` constants and theorems in the module where they are defined. The idea is to allow us to prove things about `opaque` constants in the module where they are defined, and then hide their “implementation” from other modules. The `arbitrary` constant is defined in the standard library, and nothing is proved about it. Thus, we cannot prove the following theorem.

```

definition nat_is_inhabited [instance] : inhabited nat :=
inhabited.mk nat.zero

-- "default" is transparent
example : default nat = nat.zero := rfl

-- "arbitrary" is opaque
-- cannot prove this
example : arbitrary nat = nat.zero := sorry

```

In contrast, `arbitrary nat = nat.zero` is provable in the module where `arbitrary` is defined.

```

definition nat_is_inhabited [instance] : inhabited nat :=
inhabited.mk nat.zero

-- "default" is transparent
example : default nat = nat.zero := rfl

-- "arbitrary" is transparent in the current module
opaque definition arbitrary (A : Type) [H : inhabited A] : A :=
inhabited.rec (λa, a) H

example : arbitrary nat = nat.zero := rfl

```

9.2 Chaining Instances

If that were the extent of type class inference, it would not be all that impressive; it would be simply a mechanism of storing a list of instances for the elaborator to find in a lookup

table. What makes type class inference powerful is that one can *chain* instances. That is, an instance declaration can in turn depend on an implicit instance of a type class. This causes class inference to chain through instances recursively, backtracking when necessary, in a Prolog-like search.

For example, the following definition shows that if two types `A` and `B` are inhabited, then so is their product:

```
definition prod.is_inhabited [instance] {A B : Type} [H1 : inhabited A]
  [H2 : inhabited B] : inhabited (prod A B) :=
inhabited.mk ((default A, default B))
```

With this added to the earlier instance declarations, type class instance can infer, for example, a default element of `nat × bool × unit`:

```
open prod

check default (nat × bool × unit)
eval default (nat × bool × unit)
```

Given the expression `default (nat × bool × unit)`, the elaborator is called on to infer an implicit argument `?M : inhabited (nat × bool × unit)`. The instance `inhabited_product` reduces this to inferring `?M1 : inhabited nat` and `?M2 : inhabited (bool × unit)`. The first one is solved by the instance `nat.is_inhabited`. The second invokes another application of `inhabited_product`, and so on, until the system has inferred the value `(nat.zero, bool.tt, unit.star)`.

Similarly, we can inhabit function spaces with suitable constant functions:

```
definition inhabited_fun [instance] (A : Type) {B : Type} [H : inhabited B] :
  inhabited (A → B) :=
inhabited.rec_on H (λb, inhabited.mk (λa, b))

check default (nat → nat × bool × unit)
eval default (nat → nat × bool × unit)
```

In this case, type class inference finds the default element `λ (a : nat), (nat.zero, bool.tt, unit.star)`.

As an exercise, try defining default instances for other types, such as sum types and the list type.

9.3 Decidable Propositions

Let us consider another example of a type class defined in the standard library, namely the type class of `decidable` propositions. Roughly speaking, an element of `Prop` is said

to be decidable if we can decide whether it is true or false. The distinction is only useful in constructive mathematics; classically, every proposition is decidable. Nonetheless, as we will see, the implementation of the type class allows for a smooth transition between constructive and classical logic.

In the standard library, `decidable` is defined formally as follows:

```
inductive decidable [class] (p : Prop) : Type :=
| inl : p → decidable p
| inr : ¬p → decidable p
```

Logically speaking, having an element `t : decidable p` is stronger than having an element `t : p ∨ ¬p`; it enables us to define values of an arbitrary type depending on the truth value of `p`. For example, for the expression `if p then a else b` to make sense, we need to know that `p` is decidable. That expression is syntactic sugar for `ite p a b`, where `ite` is defined as follows:

```
definition ite (c : Prop) [H : decidable c] {A : Type} (t e : A) : A :=
decidable.rec_on H (λ Hc, t) (λ Hnc, e)
```

The standard library also contains a variant of `ite` called `dite`. We say it is the dependent if-then-else expression. It is defined as follows:

```
definition dite (c : Prop) [H : decidable c] {A : Type} (t : c → A) (e : ¬ c → A) : A :=
decidable.rec_on H (λ Hc : c, t Hc) (λ Hnc : ¬ c, e Hnc)
```

That is, in `dite c t e`, we can assume `Hc : c` in the “then” branch, and `Hnc : ¬ c` in the “else” branch. To make `dite` more convenient to use, Lean provides the syntactic sugar `if h : c then t else e` for `dite c (λ h : c, t) (λ h : ¬ c, e)`.

In the standard library, we cannot prove that every proposition is decidable. But we can prove that *certain* propositions are decidable. For example, we can prove that basic operations like equality and comparisons on the natural numbers and the integers are decidable. Moreover, decidability is preserved under propositional connectives:

```
check @decidable_and
check @decidable_or
check @decidable_not
check @decidable_implies
```

Thus we can carry out definitions by cases on decidable predicates on the natural numbers:

```

import standard

open nat

definition step (a b x : ℕ) : ℕ :=
  if x < a ∨ x > b then 0 else 1

set_option pp.implicit true
print definition step

```

Turning on implicit arguments shows that the elaborator has inferred the decidability of the proposition $x < a \vee x > b$, simply by applying appropriate instances.

With the classical axioms, we can prove that every proposition is decidable. When you import the classical axioms, then, `decidable p` has an instance for every `p`, and the elaborator infers that value quickly. Thus all theorems in the standard library that rely on decidability assumptions are freely available in the classical library.

This explains the “proof” `dec_trivial` in Section [Type Classes and Instances](#) above. The expression `dec_trivial` is actually defined in the module `init.logic` to be notation for the expression `of_is_true trivial`, where `of_is_true` infers the decidability of the theorem you are trying to prove, extracts the corresponding decision procedure, and confirms that it evaluates to `true`.

9.4 Overloading with Type Classes

We now consider the application of type classes that motivates their use in functional programming languages like Haskell, namely, to overload notation in a principled way. In Lean, a symbol like `+` can be given entirely unrelated meanings, a phenomenon that is sometimes called “ad-hoc” overloading. Typically, however, we use the `+` symbol to denote a binary function from a type to itself, that is, a function of type $A \rightarrow A \rightarrow A$ for some type `A`. We can use type classes to infer an appropriate addition function for suitable types `A`. We will see in the next section that this is especially useful for developing algebraic hierarchies of structures in a formal setting.

We can declare a type class `has_add A` as follows:

```

import standard

inductive has_add [class] (A : Type) : Type :=
mk : (A → A → A) → has_add A

definition add {A : Type} [s : has_add A] :=
has_add.rec (λx, x) s

notation a `+` b := add a b

```

The class `has_add A` is supposed to be inhabited exactly when there is an appropriate addition function for `A`. The `add` function is designed to find an instance of `has_add A` for the given type, `A`, and apply the corresponding binary addition function. The notation `a + b` thus refers to the addition that is appropriate to the type of `a` and `b`. We can then declare instances for `nat`, `int`, and `bool`:

```

definition has_add_nat [instance] : has_add nat :=
  has_add.mk nat.add

definition has_add_int [instance] : has_add int :=
  has_add.mk int.add

definition has_add_bool [instance] : has_add bool :=
  has_add.mk bool.bor

open [coercions] nat int
open bool

set_option pp.notation false
check (2 : nat) + 2    -- nat
check (2 : int) + 2    -- int
check tt + ff         -- bool

```

In the example above, we expose the coercions in namespaces `nat` and `int`, so that we can use numerals. If we opened these namespace outright, the symbol `+` would be ad-hoc overloaded. This would result in an ambiguity as to which addition we have in mind when we write `a + b` for `a b : nat`. The ambiguity is benign, however, since the new interpretation of `+` for `nat` is definitionally equal to the usual one. Setting the option to turn off notation while pretty-printing shows us that it is the new `add` function that is inferred in each case. Thus we are relying on type class overloading to disambiguate the meaning of the expression, rather than ad-hoc overloading.

As with `inhabited` and `decidable`, the power of type class inference stems not only from the fact that the class enables the elaborator to look up appropriate instances, but also from the fact that it can chain instances to infer complex addition operations. For example, assuming that there are appropriate addition functions for types `A` and `B`, we can define addition on `A × B` pointwise:

```

definition has_add_prod [instance] {A B : Type} [sA : has_add A] [sB : has_add B] :
  has_add (A × B) :=
  has_add.mk (take p q, (add (prod.pr1 p) (prod.pr1 q), add (prod.pr2 p) (prod.pr2 q)))

open nat

check (1, 2) + (3, 4)    -- ℕ × ℕ
eval (1, 2) + (3, 4)     -- (4, 6)

```

We can similarly define pointwise addition of functions:

```

definition has_add_fun [instance] {A B : Type} [sB : has_add B] :
  has_add (A → B) :=
has_add.mk (λf g, λx, f x + g x)

open nat

check (λx : nat, (1 : nat)) + (λx, (2 : nat)) -- N → N
eval (λx : nat, (1 : nat)) + (λx, (2 : nat)) -- λ (x : N), 3

```

As an exercise, try defining instances of `has_add` for lists and vectors, and show that they have the work as expected.

9.5 Managing Type Class Inference

Recall from Section 5.1 that you can ask Lean for information about the classes and instances that are currently in scope:

```

print classes
print instances inhabited

```

At times, you may find that the type class inference fails to find an expected instance, or, worse, falls into an infinite loop and times out. To help debug in these situations, Lean enables you to request a trace of the search:

```

set_option class.trace_instances true

```

If you add this to your file in Emacs mode and use `C-c C-x` to run an independent Lean process on your file, the output buffer will show a trace every time the type class resolution procedure is subsequently triggered.

You can also limit the search depth (the default is 32):

```

set_option class.instance_max_depth 5

```

Remember also that in the Emacs Lean mode, tab completion works in `set_option`, to help you find suitable options.

As noted above, the type class instances in a given context represent a Prolog-like program, which gives rise to a backtracking search. Both the efficiency of the program and the solutions that are found can depend on the order in which the system tries the instance. Instances which are declared last are tried first. Moreover, if instances are declared in other modules, the order in which they are tried depends on the order in which namespaces are opened. Instances declared in namespaces which are opened later are tried earlier.

You can modify change the order that type classes instances are tried by assigning them a *priority*. When an instance is declared, it is assigned a priority value `std.priority.default`, defined to be 1000 in module `init.priority` in both the standard and `hott` libraries. You can assign other priorities when defining an instance, and you can later change the priority with the `attribute` command. The following example illustrates how this is done:

```
open nat

structure foo [class] :=
  (a : nat) (b : nat)

definition i1 [instance] [priority default+10] : foo :=
  foo.mk 1 1

definition i2 [instance] : foo :=
  foo.mk 2 2

example : foo.a = 1 := rfl

definition i3 [instance] [priority default+20] : foo :=
  foo.mk 3 3

example : foo.a = 3 := rfl

attribute i3 [priority 500]

example : foo.a = 1 := rfl

attribute i1 [priority default-10]

example : foo.a = 2 := rfl
```

9.6 Instances in Sections

We can easily introduces instances of type classes in a section or context using variables and parameters. Recall that variables are only included in declarations when they are explicitly mentioned. Instances of type classes are rarely explicitly mentioned in definitions, so to make sure that an instance of a type class is included in every definition and theorem, we use the `include` command.

```
section
  variables {A : Type} [H : has_add A] (a b : A)
  include H

  definition foo : a + b = a + b := rfl
  check @foo
end
```

Note that the `include` command includes a variable in every definition and theorem in that section. If we want to declare a definition of theorem which does not use the instance, we can use the `omit` command:

```

section
  variables {A : Type} [H : has_add A] (a b : A)
  include H
  definition foo1 : a + b = a + b := rfl
  omit H
  definition foo2 : a = a := rfl -- H is not an argument of foo2
  include H
  definition foo3 : a + a = a + a := rfl

  check @foo1
  check @foo2
  check @foo3
end

```

9.7 Bounded Quantification

A “bounded universal quantifier” is one that is of the form $\forall x : \text{nat}, x < n \rightarrow P x$. As a final illustration of the power of type class inference, we show that a proposition of this form is decidable assuming P is, and that type class inference can make use of that fact.

```

import data.nat
open nat decidable

-- define (ball n P) as a shorthand for  $\forall x : \text{nat}, x < n \rightarrow P x$ 
definition ball (n : nat) (P : nat → Prop) : Prop :=
 $\forall x, x < n \rightarrow P x$ 

-- We now prove some auxiliary constructions for the decidability proof

-- Prove:  $\forall x : \text{nat}, x < 0 \rightarrow P x$ 
definition ball_zero (P : nat → Prop) : ball zero P :=
 $\lambda x \text{ Hlt}, \text{absurd Hlt !not\_lt\_zero}$ 

variables {n : nat} {P : nat → Prop}

-- Prove:  $(\forall x : \text{nat}, x < \text{succ } n \rightarrow P x)$  implies  $(\forall x : \text{nat}, x < n \rightarrow P x)$ 
definition ball_of_ball_succ (H : ball (succ n) P) : ball n P :=
 $\lambda x \text{ Hlt}, H x (\text{lt.step Hlt})$ 

-- We use the following theorem from the standard library
check eq_or_lt_of_le
--  $?a \leq ?b \rightarrow ?a = ?b \vee ?a < ?b$ 

-- Prove:  $(\forall x : \text{nat}, x < n \rightarrow P x)$  and  $(P n)$  implies  $(\forall x : \text{nat}, x < \text{succ } n \rightarrow P x)$ 
definition ball_succ_of_ball (H1 : ball n P) (H2 : P n) : ball (succ n) P :=
 $\lambda (x : \text{nat}) (\text{Hlt} : x < \text{succ } n), \text{or.elim (eq_or_lt_of_le Hlt)}$ 
   $(\lambda \text{ he} : x = n, \text{eq.rec\_on (eq.rec\_on he rfl) H2})$ 
   $(\lambda \text{ hlt} : x < n, H1 x \text{ hlt})$ 

```



```

-- Prove: (¬ P n) implies ¬ (∀ x : nat, x < succ n → P x)
definition not_ball_of_not (H1 : ¬ P n) : ¬ ball (succ n) P :=
λ (H : ball (succ n) P), absurd (H n (lt.base n)) H1

-- Prove: ¬ (∀ x : nat, x < n → P x) implies ¬ (∀ x : nat, x < succ n → P x)
definition not_ball_succ_of_not_ball (H1 : ¬ ball n P) : ¬ ball (succ n) P :=
λ (H : ball (succ n) P), absurd (ball_of_ball_succ H) H1

-- Prove by induction/recursion that if P is a decidable predicate, then so is
-- (∀ x : nat, x < n → P x)
definition dec_ball [instance] (H : decidable_pred P) : Π (n : nat), decidable (ball n P)
| dec_ball 0      := inl (ball_zero P)
| dec_ball (a+1) :=
  match dec_ball a with
  | inl iH :=
    match H a with
    | inl Pa := inl (ball_succ_of_ball iH Pa)
    | inr nPa := inr (not_ball_of_not nPa)
    end
  | inr niH := inr (not_ball_succ_of_not_ball niH)
  end

-- Now, we can use dec_trivial to prove simple theorems by "evaluation"
example : ∀ x : nat, x ≤ 4 → x ≠ 6 :=
dec_trivial

example : ¬ ∀ x, x ≤ 5 → ∀ y, y < x → y * y ≠ x :=
dec_trivial

-- We can use bounded quantifiers to implement computable functions.
-- The function (is_constant_range f n) returns tt iff the function f evaluates
-- to the same value for all 0 ≤ i < n
open bool
definition is_constant_range (f : nat → nat) (n : nat) : bool :=
if ∀ i, i < n → f i = f 0 then tt else ff

example : is_constant_range (λ i, zero) 10 = tt :=
rfl

```

As exercise, we encourage you to show that $\exists x : \text{nat}, x < n \wedge P x$ is also decidable.

```

import data.nat
open nat decidable

definition bex (n : nat) (P : nat → Prop) : Prop :=
∃ x : nat, x < n ∧ P x

definition not_bex_zero (P : nat → Prop) : ¬ bex 0 P :=
sorry

variables {n : nat} {P : nat → Prop}

definition bex_succ (H : bex n P) : bex (succ n) P :=
sorry

```

```

definition bex_succ_of_pred (H : P n) : bex (succ n) P :=
  sorry

```

```

definition not_bex_succ (H1 : ¬ bex n P) (H2 : ¬ P n) : ¬ bex (succ n) P :=
  sorry

```

```

definition dec_bex [instance] (H : decidable_pred P) : Π (n : nat), decidable (bex n P) :=
  sorry

```

Structures and Records

We have seen that the Calculus of Inductive Constructions includes inductive types, and the remarkable fact that it is possible to construct a substantial edifice of mathematics based on nothing more than the type universes, Pi types, and inductive types; everything else follows from those. The Lean standard library contains many instances of inductive types (e.g., `nat`, `prod`, `list`), and even the logical connectives are defined using inductive types.

Remember that a non-recursive inductive type that contains only one constructor is called a *structure* or *record*. The product type is a structure, as is the dependent product type (`sigma`). Whenever we defined a structure `S`, we usually define *projection* functions that allow us to “destruct” an object `S` and retrieve a values that are stored in its fields. The functions `prod.pr1` and `prod.pr2`, which return the first and second elements of a pair are examples of projections.

When writing programs or formalizing mathematics, it is not uncommon to define structures containing many fields. The `structure` command, available in Lean, provides automation to support the process. It generates all the projection functions, and allow us to define new structures based on previously defined ones. Lean also provides convenient notation for defining objects of a given structure.

10.1 Declaring Structures

The `structure` command is essentially a “macro” built on top of the inductive datatype provided by the Lean kernel. Every `structure` declaration introduces a namespace with the same name. The general form of a structure declaration is as follows:

```
structure <name> <parameters> <parent-structures> : Type :=
  <constructor> :: <fields>
```

Most parts are optional. Here is a small example:

```
structure point (A : Type) :=
mk :: (x : A) (y : A)
```

Values of type `point` are created using `point.mk a b`, and the fields of a point `p` are accessed using `point.x p` and `point.y p`. The structure command also generates useful recursors and theorems. Here are some of the constructions generated for the declaration above.

```
check point           -- a Type
check point.rec_on     -- the recursor
check point.induction_on -- then recursor to Prop
check point.destruct   -- an alias for point.rec_on
check point.x          -- a projection / field accessor
check point.y          -- a projection / field accessor
```

You can obtain the complete list of generated construction using the command `print prefix`.

```
print prefix point
```

Here is some simple theorems and expressions using the generated constructions. As usual, you can avoid the prefix `point` by using the command `open point`.

```
eval point.x (point.mk 10 20)
eval point.y (point.mk 10 20)

open point

example (A : Type) (a b : A) : x (mk a b) = a :=
rfl

example (A : Type) (a b : A) : y (mk a b) = b :=
rfl
```

If the constructor is not provided, then a constructor is named `mk` by default.

```
structure prod (A : Type) (B : Type) :=
  (pr1 : A) (pr2 : B)

check prod.mk
```

The keyword **record** is an alias for **structure**.

```
record point (A : Type) :=
mk :: (x : A) (y : A)
```

You can provide universe levels explicitly.

```
-- Force A and B to be types from the same universe,
-- and return a type also in the same universe.
structure prod.{1} (A : Type.{1}) (B : Type.{1}) : Type.{max 1 1} :=
(pr1 : A) (pr2 : B)

-- Ask Lean to pretty print universe levels
set_option pp.universes true
check prod.mk
```

We use `max 1 1` as the resultant universe level to ensure the universe level is never 0 even when the parameter `A` and `B` are propositions. Recall that in Lean, `Type.{0}` is `Prop`, which is impredicative and proof irrelevant.

10.2 Objects

We have been using constructors to create objects of structure / record types. For structures containing many fields, this is often inconvenient, because we have to remember the order in which the fields were defined. Therefore, Lean provides the following alternative notations for defining elements of a structure type.

```
{| <structure-type> (, <field-name> := <expr>)* |}
or
{| <structure-type> (, <field-name> := <expr>)* |}
```

For example, let us define objects of the point record.

```
structure point (A : Type) :=
mk :: (x : A) (y : A)

check {| point, x := 10, y := 20 |}
check {| point, y := 20, x := 10 |}
check {| point, x := 10, y := 20 |}

-- the order of the fields does not matter
example : {| point, x := 10, y := 20 |} = {| point, y := 20, x := 10 |} :=
rfl
```

Note that `point` is a parametric type, but we did not provide its parameters, since Lean can infer them automatically for us. Of course, the parameters can be explicitly provided if needed.

```
check {| point nat, x := 10, y := 20 |}
```

If the value of a field is not specified, Lean tries to infer it. If the unspecified fields cannot be inferred, Lean signs an error indicating the corresponding placeholder could not be synthesized.

```
structure my_struct :=
mk :: (A : Type) (B : Type) (a : A) (b : B)

check {| my_struct, a := 10, b := true |}
```

The notation for defining record objects can also be used in pattern-matching expressions.

```
open nat
structure big :=
(field1 : nat) (field2 : nat)
(field3 : nat) (field4 : nat)
(field5 : nat) (field6 : nat)

definition b : big := big.mk 1 2 3 4 5 6

definition v3 : nat :=
  match b with
  { | big, field3 := v | } := v
  end

example : v3 = 3 := rfl
```

Record update is another common operation. It consists in creating a new record object by modifying the value of one or more fields. Lean provides a variation of the notation described above for record updates.

```
{| <structure-type> (, <field-name> := <expr>)* (, <record-obj>)* |}
or
{| <structure-type> (, <field-name> := <expr>)* (, <record-obj>)* |}
```

The semantics is simple: record objects `<record-obj>` provide the values for the unspecified fields. If more than one record object is provided, then they are visited in order until Lean finds one the contains the unspecified field. Lean raises an error if any of the field names remain unspecified after all the objects are visited.

```

open nat

structure point (A : Type) :=
mk :: (x : A) (y : A)

definition p1 : point nat := { | point, x := 10, y := 20 | }
definition p2 : point nat := { | point, x := 1, p1 | }
definition p3 : point nat := { | point, y := 1, p1 | }

example : point.y p1 = point.y p2 :=
rfl

example : point.x p1 = point.x p3 :=
rfl

```

10.3 Inheritance

We can *extend* existing structures by adding new fields. This feature allow us to simulate a form of “inheritance”.

```

structure point (A : Type) :=
mk :: (x : A) (y : A)

inductive color :=
red | green | blue

structure color_point (A : Type) extends point A :=
mk :: (c : color)

```

The type `color_point` inherits all the fields from `point` and declares a new one `c : color`. Lean automatically generates a *coercion* from `color_point` to `point`.

```

definition x_plus_y (p : point num) :=
point.x p + point.y p

definition green_point : color_point num :=
{ | color_point, x := 10, y := 20, c := color.green | }

eval x_plus_y green_point    -- 30

-- Force lean to display implicit coercions
set_option pp.coercions true

check x_plus_y green_point    -- not

example : green_point = point.mk 10 20 :=
rfl

check color_point.to_point

```

The coercions are named `to_<parent structure>`. Lean always declare functions that map the child structure to its parents. We can ask Lean not to mark these functions as coercions by using the `private` keyword.

```

structure point (A : Type) :=
mk :: (x : A) (y : A)

inductive color :=
red | green | blue

structure color_point (A : Type) extends private point A :=
mk :: (c : color)

example : color_point.to_point
  { | color_point, x := 10, y := 20, c := color.blue | } =
  { | point, x := 10, y := 20 | } :=
rfl

```

For private parent structures we have to use the coercions explicitly. If we remove `color_point.to_point` in the last example, we get a type error.

We can “rename” fields inherited from parent structures using the `renaming` clause.

```

structure prod (A : Type) (B : Type) :=
pair :: (pr1 : A) (pr2 : B)

-- Rename fields pr1 and pr2 to x and y respectively.
structure point3 (A : Type) extends prod A A renaming pr1→x pr2→y :=
mk :: (z : A)

check point3.x
check point3.y
check point3.z

example : point3.mk 10 20 30 = prod.pair 10 20 :=
rfl

```

For another example, we define a structure using “multiple inheritance,” and then define an object using objects of the parent structures.

```

import data.nat.basic
open nat

structure s1 (A : Type) :=
(x : A) (y : A) (z : A)

structure s2 (A : Type) :=
(mul : A → A → A) (one : A)

structure s3 (A : Type) extends s1 A, s2 A :=
(mul_one : ∀ a : A, mul a one = a)

```

```

definition v1 : s1 nat := { | s1, x := 10, y := 10, z := 20 | }
definition v2 : s2 nat := { | s2, mul := nat.add, one := zero | }
definition v3 : s3 nat := { | s3, v1, v2, mul_one := add_zero | }

example : s3.x v3 = 10 := rfl
example : s3.y v3 = 10 := rfl
example : s3.mul v3 = nat.add := rfl
example : s3.one v3 = nat.zero := rfl

```

10.4 Structures as Classes

Any structure can be tagged as a *class*. This makes them suitable targets for the class-instance resolution procedures, which was described in the previous chapter. Declaring a structure as a class also has the effect that the structure argument in each projection is tagged as an implicit argument to be inferred by type class resolution.

For example, in the definition of the `has_mul` structure below, the projection `has_mul.mul` has an implicit argument `[s : has_mul A]`. This means that when we write `has_mul.mul a b` with `a b : A`, type class resolution will search for a suitable instance of `has_mul A`, a multiplication structure associated with `A`. As a result, we can define the binary notation `a * b`, leaving the structure implicit.

```

structure has_mul [class] (A : Type) :=
mk :: (mul : A → A → A)

check @has_mul.mul

infixl `*` := has_mul.mul

section
  variables (A : Type) (s : has_mul A) (a b : A)
  check a * b
end

```

In the last `check` command, the structure `s` in the local context is used to synthesize the implicit argument in `a * b`.

When a structure is marked as a class, the functions mapping a child structure to its parents are also marked as instances unless the `private` modifier is used. As a result, whenever an instance of the parent structure is required, and instance of the child structure can be provided. In the following example, we use this mechanism to “reuse” the notation defined for the parent structure with the child structure.

```

structure has_mul [class] (A : Type) :=
mk :: (mul : A → A → A)

infixl `*` := has_mul.mul

```

```

structure semigroup [class] (A : Type) extends has_mul A :=
mk :: (assoc : ∀ a b c, mul (mul a b) c = mul a (mul b c))

section
  variables (A : Type) (s : semigroup A) (a b : A)
  check a * b
end

```

Once again, the structure `s` in the local context is used to synthesize the implicit argument in `a * b`. We can see what is going by asking Lean to display implicit arguments, coercions, and disable notation.

```

section
  variables (A : Type) (s : semigroup A) (a b : A)

  set_option pp.implicit true
  set_option pp.notation false
  set_option pp.coercions true

  check a * b -- @has_mul.mul A (@semigroup.to_has_mul A s) a b : A
end

```

Here is a fragment of the algebraic hierarchy defined using this mechanism. In Lean, you can also inherit from multiple structures. Moreover, fields with the same name are merged. If the types do not match an error is generated. The “merge” can be avoided by using the `renaming` clause.

```

structure has_mul [class] (A : Type) :=
mk :: (mul : A → A → A)

structure has_one [class] (A : Type) :=
mk :: (one : A)

structure has_inv [class] (A : Type) :=
mk :: (inv : A → A)

infixl `*` := has_mul.mul
postfix `^-1` := has_inv.inv
notation 1 := has_one.one

structure semigroup [class] (A : Type) extends has_mul A :=
mk :: (assoc : ∀ a b c, mul (mul a b) c = mul a (mul b c))

structure comm_semigroup [class] (A : Type) extends semigroup A :=
mk :: (comm : ∀ a b, mul a b = mul b a)

structure monoid [class] (A : Type) extends semigroup A, has_one A :=
mk :: (right_id : ∀ a, mul a one = a) (left_id : ∀ a, mul one a = a)

-- We can suppress := and :: when we are not declaring any new field.
structure comm_monoid [class] (A : Type) extends monoid A, comm_semigroup A

```

```
-- The common fields of monoid and comm_semigroup have been merged
print prefix comm_monoid
```

The `renaming` clause allow us to perform non-trivial merge operations such as combining an abelian group with a monoid to obtain a ring.

```
structure has_mul [class] (A : Type) :=
  (mul : A → A → A)

structure has_one [class] (A : Type) :=
  (one : A)

structure has_inv [class] (A : Type) :=
  (inv : A → A)

infixl `*` := has_mul.mul
postfix `^-1` := has_inv.inv
notation 1 := has_one.one

structure semigroup [class] (A : Type) extends has_mul A :=
  (assoc : ∀ a b c, mul (mul a b) c = mul a (mul b c))

structure comm_semigroup [class] (A : Type) extends semigroup A renaming mul→add:=
  (comm : ∀ a b, add a b = add b a)

infixl `+` := comm_semigroup.add

structure monoid [class] (A : Type) extends semigroup A, has_one A :=
  (right_id : ∀ a, mul a one = a) (left_id : ∀ a, mul one a = a)

-- We can suppress := and :: when we are not declaring any new field.
structure comm_monoid [class] (A : Type) extends monoid A renaming mul→add, comm_semigroup A

structure group [class] (A : Type) extends monoid A, has_inv A :=
  (is_inv : ∀ a, mul a (inv a) = one)

structure abelian_group [class] (A : Type) extends group A renaming mul→add, comm_monoid A

structure ring [class] (A : Type)
  extends abelian_group A renaming
    assoc→add.assoc
    comm→add.comm
    one→zero
    right_id→add.right_id
    left_id→add.left_id
    inv→uminus
    is_inv→uminus_is_inv,
  monoid A renaming
    assoc→mul.assoc
    right_id→mul.right_id
    left_id→mul.left_id
:=
(dist_left : ∀ a b c, mul a (add b c) = add (mul a b) (mul a c))
(dist_right : ∀ a b c, mul (add a b) c = add (mul a c) (mul b c))
```

Tactics

In this chapter, we describe an alternative approach to constructing proofs, using *tactics*. A proof term is a representation of a mathematical proof; tactics are commands, or instructions, that describe how to build such a proof. Informally, we might begin a mathematical proof by saying “to prove the forward direction, unfold the definition, apply the previous lemma, and simplify.” Just as these are instructions that tell the reader how to find the relevant proof, tactics are instructions that tell Lean how to construct a proof term.

We will describe proofs that consist of sequences of tactics as “tactic-style” proofs, to contrast with the ways of writing proof terms we have seen so far, which we will call “term-style” proofs. Each style has its own advantages and disadvantage. One important difference is that term-style proofs are elaborated globally, and information gathered from one part of a term can be used to fill in implicit information in another part of the term. In contrast, we will see that tactics apply locally, and are narrowly focused on a single subgoal in the proof. Tactics naturally support an incremental style of writing proofs, in which users decompose a proof and work on goals one step at a time.

11.1 Entering the Tactic Mode

Conceptually, stating a theorem or introducing a **have** statement creates a goal, namely, the goal of constructing a term with the expected type. For example, the following creates the goal of constructing a term of type $p \wedge q \wedge p$, in a context with constants $p, q : \text{Prop}$, $H_p : p$ and $H_q : q$:

```
theorem test (p q : Prop) (Hp : p) (Hq : q) : p ∧ q ∧ p :=
sorry
```

We can write this goal as follows:

```
p : Prop, q : Prop, Hp : p, Hq : q ⊢ p ∧ q ∧ p
```

Indeed, if you replace the “sorry” by an underscore in the example above, Lean will report that it is exactly this goal that has been left unsolved.

Ordinarily, we meet such a goal by writing an explicit term. But wherever a term is expected, Lean allows us to insert instead a **begin ... end** block, followed by a sequence of commands, separated by commas. We can prove the theorem above in that way:

```
theorem test (p q : Prop) (Hp : p) (Hq : q) : p ∧ q ∧ p :=
begin
  apply and.intro,
  exact Hp,
  apply and.intro,
  exact Hq,
  exact Hp
end
```

The **apply** tactic applies an expression, viewed as denoting a function with zero or more arguments. It unifies the conclusion with the expression in the current goal, and creates new goals for the remaining arguments, provided that no later arguments depend on them. In the example above, the command **apply and.intro** yields two subgoals:

```
p : Prop,
q : Prop,
Hp : p,
Hq : q
⊢ p

⊢ q ∧ p
```

For brevity, Lean only displays the context for the first goal, which is the one addressed by the next tactic command. The first goal is met with the command **exact Hp**. The **exact** command is just a variant of **apply** which signals that the expression given should fill the goal exactly. It is good form to use it in a tactic proof, since its failure signals that something has gone wrong; but otherwise **apply** would work just as well.

You can see the resulting proof term with **print definition**:

```
print definition test
```

You can write a tactic script incrementally. If you run Lean on an incomplete tactic proof bracketed by **begin** and **end**, the system reports all the unsolved goals that remain.

If you are running Lean with its Emacs interface, you can see this information by putting your cursor on the `end` symbol, which should be underlined. In the Emacs interface, there is another useful trick: if you open up the `*lean-info*` buffer in a separate window and put your cursor on the comma after a tactic command, Lean shows you the goals that remain open at that stage in the proof.

Tactic commands can take compound expressions, not just single identifiers. The following is a shorter version of the preceding proof:

```
theorem test (p q : Prop) (Hp : p) (Hq : q) : p ∧ q ∧ p :=
begin
  apply (and.intro Hp),
  exact (and.intro Hq Hp)
end
```

Unsurprisingly, it produces exactly the same proof term.

```
print definition test
```

Tactic applications can also be concatenated with a semicolon. Formally speaking, there is only one (compound) step in the following proof:

```
theorem test (p q : Prop) (Hp : p) (Hq : q) : p ∧ q ∧ p :=
begin
  apply (and.intro Hp); exact (and.intro Hq Hp)
end
```

Whenever a proof term is expected, instead of using a `begin` / `end` block, you can write the `by` keyword followed by a single tactic:

```
theorem test (p q : Prop) (Hp : p) (Hq : q) : p ∧ q ∧ p :=
by apply (and.intro Hp); exact (and.intro Hq Hp)
```

11.2 Basic Tactics

In addition to `apply` and `exact`, another useful tactic is `intro`, which introduces a hypothesis. What follows is an example of an identity from propositional logic that we proved in Section 3.6, but now prove using tactics. We adopt the following convention regarding indentation: whenever a tactic introduces one or more additional subgoals, we indent another two spaces, until the additional subgoals are deleted.

```

example (p q r : Prop) : p ∧ (q ∨ r) ↔ (p ∧ q) ∨ (p ∧ r) :=
begin
  apply iff.intro,
  intro H,
  apply (or.elim (and.elim_right H)),
  intro Hq,
  apply or.intro_left,
  apply and.intro,
  exact (and.elim_left H),
  exact Hq,
  intro Hr,
  apply or.intro_right,
  apply and.intro,
  exact (and.elim_left H),
  exact Hr,
  intro H,
  apply (or.elim H),
  intro Hpq,
  apply and.intro,
  exact (and.elim_left Hpq),
  apply or.intro_left,
  exact (and.elim_right Hpq),
  intro Hpr,
  apply and.intro,
  exact (and.elim_left Hpr),
  apply or.intro_right,
  exact (and.elim_right Hpr)
end

```

A variant of `apply` called `fapply` is more aggressive in creating new subgoals for arguments. Here is an example of how it is used:

```

import data.nat
open nat

example : ∃ a : ℕ, a = a :=
begin
  fapply exists.intro,
  exact nat.zero,
  apply rfl
end

```

The command `fapply exists.intro` creates two goals. The first is to provide a natural number, `a`, and the second is to prove that `a = a`. Notice that the second goal depends on the first; solving the first goal instantiates a metavariable in the second.

Notice also that we could not write `exact 0` in the proof above, because `0` is a numeral that is coerced to a natural number. In the context of a tactic proof, expressions are elaborated “locally,” before being sent to the tactic command. When the tactic command is being processed, Lean does not have enough information to determine that `0` needs to be coerced. We can get around that by stating the type explicitly:

```
example :  $\exists a : \mathbb{N}, a = a :=$ 
begin
  fapply exists.intro,
  exact (0 :  $\mathbb{N}$ ),
  apply rfl
end
```

Another tactic that is sometimes useful is the **generalize** tactic, which is, in a sense, an inverse to **intro**.

```
import data.nat
open nat

variables x y z :  $\mathbb{N}$ 

example :  $x = x :=$ 
begin
  generalize x, -- goal is  $x : \mathbb{N} \vdash \forall (x : \mathbb{N}), x = x$ 
  intro y,      -- goal is  $x y : \mathbb{N} \vdash y = y$ 
  apply rfl
end

example (H :  $x = y$ ) :  $y = x :=$ 
begin
  generalize H, -- goal is  $x y : \mathbb{N}, H : x = y \vdash y = x$ 
  intro H1,     -- goal is  $x y : \mathbb{N}, H H1 : x = y \vdash y = x$ 
  apply (eq.symm H1)
end
```

In the first example, the **generalize** tactic generalizes the conclusion over the variable x , turning the goal into a \forall . In the second, it generalizes the goal over the hypothesis H , putting the antecedent explicitly into the goal. We generalize any term, not just variables:

```
example :  $x + y + z = x + y + z :=$ 
begin
  generalize (x + y + z), -- goal is  $x y z : \mathbb{N} \vdash \forall (x : \mathbb{N}), x = x$ 
  intro w,               -- goal is  $x y z w : \mathbb{N} \vdash w = w$ 
  apply rfl
end
```

Notice that once we generalize over $x + y + z$, the variables $x y z : \mathbb{N}$ in the context become irrelevant. (The same is true of the hypothesis H in the previous example.) The **clear** tactic throw away elements of the context, when it is safe to do so:

```
example :  $x + y + z = x + y + z :=$ 
begin
  generalize (x + y + z), -- goal is  $x y z : \mathbb{N} \vdash \forall (x : \mathbb{N}), x = x$ 
  clear x, clear y, clear z,
  intro w,               -- goal is  $w : \mathbb{N} \vdash w = w$ 
```

```

    apply rfl
end

```

The `revert` tactic is a combination of `generalize` and `clear`:

```

example : x = x :=
begin
  revert x,      -- goal is  $\vdash \forall (x : \mathbb{N}), x = x$ 
  intro y,      -- goal is  $y : \mathbb{N} \vdash y = y$ 
  apply rfl
end

example (H : x = y) : y = x :=
begin
  revert H,      -- goal is  $x y : \mathbb{N} \vdash x = y \rightarrow y = x$ 
  intro H1,     -- goal is  $x y : \mathbb{N}, H1 : x = y \vdash y = x$ 
  apply (eq.symm H1)
end

```

The `generalize` and `revert` tactics are often useful when carrying out proofs by induction, when it is often needed to obtain the right induction hypothesis.

The `assumption` tactic looks through the assumptions in context of the current goal, and if there is one matching the conclusion, it applies it.

```

example (H1 : x = y) (H2 : y = z) (H3 : z = w) : x = w :=
begin
  apply (eq.trans H1),
  apply (eq.trans H2),
  assumption -- applied H3
end

```

The `eassumption` tactic is more aggressive; for example, it will unify metavariables in the conclusion if necessary.

```

example (H1 : x = y) (H2 : y = z) (H3 : z = w) : x = w :=
begin
  apply eq.trans,
  eassumption, -- solves  $x = ?b$  with H1
  apply eq.trans,
  eassumption, -- solves  $?b = w$  with H2
  eassumption -- solves  $z = w$  with H3
end

```

11.3 Managing Auxiliary Facts

Recall from Section 8.7 that we need to use `assert` instead of `have` to state auxiliary subgoals if we wish to use them in tactic proofs. For example, the following proofs fail, if we replace any `assert` by a `have`:

```

example (p q : Prop) (H : p ∧ q) : p ∧ q ∧ p :=
assert Hp : p, from and.left H,
assert Hq : q, from and.right H,
begin
  apply (and.intro Hp),
  apply (and.intro Hq),
  exact Hp
end

example (p q : Prop) (H : p ∧ q) : p ∧ q ∧ p :=
assert Hp : p, from and.left H,
assert Hq : q, from and.right H,
begin
  apply and.intro,
  assumption,
  apply and.intro,
  assumption
end

```

Alternatively, we can explicitly put a `have` statement in to the context, with `using`:

```

example (p q : Prop) (H : p ∧ q) : p ∧ q ∧ p :=
have Hp : p, from and.left H,
have Hq : q, from and.right H,
show _, using Hp Hq,
begin
  apply and.intro,
  assumption,
  apply and.intro,
  assumption
end

```

11.4 Structuring Tactic Proofs

One thing that is nice about Lean’s proof-writing syntax is that it is possible to mix term-style and tactic-style proofs, and pass between the two freely. For example, the tactics `apply` and `exact` expect arbitrary terms, which you can write using `have`, `show`, `obtains`, and so on. Conversely, when writing an arbitrary Lean term, you can always invoke the tactic mode by inserting a `begin ... end` block. In the next example, we use `show` within a tactic block to fulfill a goal by providing an explicit term.

```

example (p q r : Prop) : p ∧ (q ∨ r) ↔ (p ∧ q) ∨ (p ∧ r) :=
begin
  apply iff.intro,
  intro H,
  apply (or.elim (and.elim_right H)),
  intro Hq,
  show (p ∧ q) ∨ (p ∧ r),
  from or.inl (and.intro (and.elim_left H) Hq),
end

```

```

    intro Hr,
    show (p ∧ q) ∨ (p ∧ r),
    from or.inr (and.intro (and.elim_left H) Hr),
  intro H,
  apply (or.elim H),
  intro Hpq,
  show p ∧ (q ∨ r), from
    and.intro
      (and.elim_left Hpq)
      (or.inl (and.elim_right Hpq)),
  intro Hpr,
  show p ∧ (q ∨ r), from
    and.intro
      (and.elim_left Hpr)
      (or.inr (and.elim_right Hpr))
end

```

You can also use nested `begin / end` pairs within a `begin / end` block. In the nested block, Lean focuses on the first goal, and generates an error if it has not been fully solved at the end of the block. This can be helpful in making the number of subgoals introduced by a tactic manifest, and indicating when each subgoal is completed.

```

example (p q r : Prop) : p ∧ (q ∨ r) ↔ (p ∧ q) ∨ (p ∧ r) :=
begin
  apply iff.intro,
  begin
    intro H,
    apply (or.elim (and.elim_right H)),
    intro Hq,
    show (p ∧ q) ∨ (p ∧ r),
    from or.inl (and.intro (and.elim_left H) Hq),
    intro Hr,
    show (p ∧ q) ∨ (p ∧ r),
    from or.inr (and.intro (and.elim_left H) Hr),
  end,
  begin
    intro H,
    apply (or.elim H),
    begin
      intro Hpq,
      show p ∧ (q ∨ r), from
        and.intro
          (and.elim_left Hpq)
          (or.inl (and.elim_right Hpq)),
    end,
    begin
      intro Hpr,
      show p ∧ (q ∨ r), from
        and.intro
          (and.elim_left Hpr)
          (or.inr (and.elim_right Hpr))
    end
  end
end

```

Notice that you still need to use a comma after a **begin** / **end** block when there are remaining goals to be discharged. Within a **begin** / **end** block, you can abbreviate nested occurrences of **begin** and **end** with curly braces:

```
example (p q r : Prop) : p ∧ (q ∨ r) ↔ (p ∧ q) ∨ (p ∧ r) :=
begin
  apply iff.intro,
  { intro H,
    apply (or.elim (and.elim_right H)),
    { intro Hq,
      apply or.intro_left,
      apply and.intro,
      { exact (and.elim_left H) },
      { exact Hq }},
    { intro Hr,
      apply or.intro_right,
      apply and.intro,
      { exact (and.elim_left H) },
      { exact Hr }},
  { intro H,
    apply (or.elim H),
    { intro Hpq,
      apply and.intro,
      { exact (and.elim_left Hpq) },
      { apply or.intro_left,
        exact (and.elim_right Hpq) }},
    { intro Hpr,
      apply and.intro,
      { exact (and.elim_left Hpr) },
      { apply or.intro_right,
        exact (and.elim_right Hpr) }}}
end
```

Here we have adopted the convention that whenever a tactic increases the number of goals to be solved, the tactics that solve each subsequent goal are enclosed in braces. This may not increase readability much, but it does help clarify the structure of the proof.

There is a **have** construct for tactic-style proofs that is similar to the one for term-style proofs. In the proof below, the first **have** creates the subgoal $H_p : p$. The **from** clause solves it, and after that H_p is available to subsequent tactics. The example illustrates that you can also use another **begin** / **end** block, or a **by** clause, to prove a subgoal introduced by **have**.

```
variables p q : Prop

example : p ∧ q ↔ q ∧ p :=
begin
  apply iff.intro,
  begin
    intro H,
    have Hp : p, from and.left H,
    have Hq : q, from and.right H,
```

```

    apply and.intro,
    assumption
end,
begin
  intro H,
  have Hp : p,
  begin
    apply and.right,
    apply H
  end,
  have Hq : q, by apply and.left; exact H,
  apply (and.intro Hp Hq)
end
end

```

11.5 Cases and Pattern Matching

The `cases` tactic works on elements of an inductively defined type. It does what the name suggests: it decomposes an element of an inductive type according to each of the possible constructors, and leaves a goal for each case. Note that the following example also uses the `revert` tactic to move the hypothesis into the conclusion of the goal.

```

import data.nat
open nat

example (x : ℕ) (H : x ≠ 0) : succ (pred x) = x :=
begin
  revert H,
  cases x,
  -- first goal: ⊢ 0 ≠ 0 → succ (pred 0) = 0
  { intro H1,
    apply (absurd rfl H1)},
  -- second goal: ⊢ succ a ≠ 0 → succ (pred (succ a)) = succ a
  { intro H1,
    apply rfl}
end

```

The `cases` tactic can also be used to extract the arguments of a constructor, even for an inductive type like `and`, for which there is only one constructor.

```

example (p q : Prop) : p ∧ q → q ∧ p :=
begin
  intro H,
  cases H with [H1, H2],
  apply and.intro,
  exact H2,
  exact H1
end

```

Here the `with` clause names the two arguments to the constructor. If you omit it, Lean will choose a name for you. If there are multiple constructors with arguments, you can provide `cases` with a list of all the names, arranged sequentially:

```
import data.nat
open nat

inductive foo : Type :=
| bar1 : ℕ → ℕ → foo
| bar2 : ℕ → ℕ → ℕ → foo

definition silly (x : foo) : ℕ :=
begin
  cases x with [a, b, c, d, e],
  exact b,      -- a, b, c are in the context
  exact e      -- d, e are in the context
end
```

You can also use pattern matching in a tactic block. With

```
example (p q r : Prop) : p ∧ q ↔ q ∧ p :=
begin
  apply iff.intro,
  { intro H,
    match H with
    | and.intro H1 H2 := by apply and.intro; assumption
    end },
  { intro H,
    match H with
    | and.intro H1 H2 := by apply and.intro; assumption
    end },
end
```

With pattern matching, the first and third examples in this section could be written as follows:

```
example (x : ℕ) (H : x ≠ 0) : succ (pred x) = x :=
begin
  revert H,
  match x with
  | 0      := assume H1 : 0 ≠ 0, show succ (pred 0) = 0,
             from absurd rfl H1
  | succ y := assume H1 : succ y ≠ 0, rfl
end
end

definition silly (x : foo) : ℕ :=
begin
  match x with
  | foo.bar1 a b := b
  | foo.bar2 c d e := e
  end
end
```

11.6 The Rewrite Tactic

The `rewrite` tactic provide a basic mechanism for applying substitutions to goals and hypotheses, providing a convenient and efficient way of working with equality. This tactic is loosely based on rewrite tactic available in the proof language SSReflect.

The `rewrite` tactic has many features. The most basic form of the tactic is `rewrite t`, where `t` is a term which conclusion is an equality. In the following example, we use this basic form to rewrite the goal using a hypothesis.

```
open nat
variables (f : nat → nat) (k : nat)

example (H1 : f 0 = 0) (H2 : k = 0) : f k = 0 :=
begin
  rewrite H2, -- replace k with 0
  rewrite H1 -- replace f 0 with 0
end
```

In the example above, the first `rewrite` tactic replaces `k` with `0` in the goal `f k = 0`. Then, the second `rewrite` replace `f 0` with `0`. The `rewrite` tactic automatically closes any goal of the form `t = t`.

Multiple rewrites can be combined using the notation `rewrite [t1, ..., tn]`, which is just shorthand for `rewrite t1, ..., rewrite tn`. The previous example can be written as:

```
open nat
variables (f : nat → nat) (k : nat)

example (H1 : f 0 = 0) (H2 : k = 0) : f k = 0 :=
begin
  rewrite [H2, H1]
end
```

By default, the `rewrite` tactic uses an equation in the forward direction, matching the left-hand side with an expression, and replacing it with the right-hand side. The notation `-t` can be used to instruct the tactic to use the equality `t` in the reverse direction.

```
open nat
variables (f : nat → nat) (a b : nat)

example (H1 : a = b) (H2 : f a = 0) : f b = 0 :=
begin
  rewrite [-H1, H2]
end
```

In this example, the term `-H1` instructs the `rewriter` to replace `b` with `a`.

The notation `*t` instructs the rewriter to apply the rewrite `t` zero or more times, while the notation `+t` instructs the rewriter to use it at least once. Note that rewriting with `*t` never fails.

```
import data.nat
open nat

example (x y : nat) : (x + y) * (x + y) = x * x + y * x + x * y + y * y :=
by rewrite [*mul.left_distrib, *mul.right_distrib, -add.assoc]
```

To avoid non-termination, the `rewriter` tactic has a limit on the maximum number of iterations performed by rewriting steps of the form `*t` and `+t`. For example, without this limit, the tactic `rewrite *add.comm` would make Lean diverge on any goal that contains a sub-term of the form `t + s` since commutativity would be always applicable. The limit can be modified by setting the option `rewriter.max_iter`.

The notation `rewrite n t`, where `n`, is a positive number indicates that `t` must be applied exactly `n` times. Similarly, `rewrite n>t` is notation for at most `n` times.

A pattern `p` can be optionally provided to a rewriting step `t` using the notation `{p}t`. It allows us to specify where the rewrite should be applied. This feature is particularly useful for rewrite rules such as commutativity `a + b = b + a` which may be applied to many different sub-terms. A pattern may contain placeholders. In the following example, the pattern `b + _` instructs the `rewrite` tactic to apply commutativity to the first term that matches `b + _`, where `_` can be matched with an arbitrary term.

```
example (a b c : nat) : a + b + c = a + c + b :=
begin
  rewrite [add.assoc, {b + _}add.comm, -add.assoc]
end
```

In the example above, the first step rewrites `a + b + c` to `a + (b + c)`. Then, `{b + _}add.comm` applies commutativity to the term `b + c`. Without the pattern `{b + _}`, the tactic would instead rewrite `a + (b + c)` to `(b + c) + a`. Finally, `-add.assoc` applies associativity in the “reverse direction” rewriting `a + (c + b)` to `a + c + b`.

By default, the tactic affects only the goal. The notation `t at H` applies the rewrite `t` at hypothesis `H`.

```
variables (f : nat → nat) (a : nat)

example (H : a + 0 = 0) : f a = f 0 :=
begin
  rewrite [add_zero at H, H]
end
```

The first step, `add_zero at H`, rewrites the hypothesis $(H : a + 0 = 0)$ to $a = 0$. Then the new hypothesis $(H : a = 0)$ is used to rewrite the goal to $f\ 0 = f\ 0$.

Multiple hypotheses can be specified in the same `at` clause.

```
variables (a b : nat)

example (H1 : a + 0 = 0) (H2 : b + 0 = 0) : a + b = 0 :=
begin
  rewrite add_zero at (H1, H2),
  rewrite [H1, H2]
end
```

You may also use `t at *` to indicate that all hypotheses and the goal should be rewritten using `t`. The tactic step fails if none of them can be rewritten. The notation `t at * ⊢` applies `t` to all hypotheses. You can enter the symbol \vdash by typing `\|-`.

```
variables (a b : nat)

example (H1 : a + 0 = 0) (H2 : b + 0 = 0) : a + b + 0 = 0 :=
begin
  rewrite add_zero at *,
  rewrite [H1, H2]
end
```

The step `add_zero at *` rewrites the hypotheses H_1 , H_2 and the main goal using the `add_zero (x : nat) : x + 0 = x`, producing $a = 0$, $b = 0$ and $a + b = 0$ respectively.

The `rewrite` tactic is not restricted to propositions. In the following example, we use `rewrite H at v` to rewrite the hypothesis $v : \text{vector } A\ n$ to $v : \text{vector } A\ 0$.

```
import data.vector
open nat

variables {A : Type} {n : nat}
example (H : n = 0) (v : vector A n) : vector A 0 :=
begin
  rewrite H at v,
  exact v
end
```

Given a rewrite $(t : l = r)$, the tactic `rewrite t` by default locates a sub-term s which matches the left-hand-side l , and then replaces all occurrences of s with the corresponding right-hand-side. The notation `at {i1, ..., ik}` can be used to restrict which occurrences of the sub-term s are replaced. For example, `rewrite t at {1, 3}` specifies that only the first and third occurrences should be replaced.

```
variables (f : nat → nat → nat → nat) (a b : nat)
```

```
example (H1 : a = b) (H2 : f b a b = 0) : f a a a = 0 :=
by rewrite [H1 at {1, 3}, H2]
```

Similarly, `rewrite t at H {1, 3}` specifies that `t` must be applied to hypothesis `H` and only the first and third occurrences must be replaced.

You can also specify which occurrences should not be replaced using the notation `rewrite t at -{i_1, ..., i_k}`. Here is the previous example using this feature.

```
example (H1 : a = b) (H2 : f b a b = 0) : f a a a = 0 :=
by rewrite [H1 at -{2}, H2]
```

So far, we have used theorems and hypotheses as rewriting rules. In these cases, the term `t` is just an identifier. The notation `rewrite (t)` can be used to provide an arbitrary term `t` as a rewriting rule.

```
import algebra.group
open algebra

variables {A : Type} [s : group A]
include s

theorem inv_eq_of_mul_eq_one {a b : A} (H : a * b = 1) : a⁻¹ = b :=
by rewrite [-(mul_one a⁻¹), -H, inv_mul_cancel_left]
```

In the example above, the term `mul_one a⁻¹` has type $a^{-1} * 1 = a^{-1}$. Thus, the rewrite step `-(mul_one a⁻¹)` replaces `a⁻¹` with `a⁻¹ * 1`.

Calculational proofs and the rewrite tactic can be used together.

```
example (a b c : nat) (H1 : a = b) (H2 : b = c + 1) : a ≠ 0 :=
calc
  a      = succ c : by rewrite [H1, H2, add_one]
  ... ≠ 0      : succ_ne_zero c
```

The `rewrite` tactic also supports reduction steps: $\uparrow f$, $\blacktriangleright *$, $\downarrow t$, and $\blacktriangleright t$. The step $\uparrow f$ unfolds `f` and performs beta/iota reduction and simplify projections. This step fails if there is no `f` to be unfolded. The step $\blacktriangleright *$ is similar to $\uparrow f$, but does not take a constant to unfold as argument, therefore it never fails. The fold step $\downarrow t$ unfolds the head symbol of `t`, then search for the result in the goal (or a given hypothesis), and replaces any match with `t`. Finally, $\blacktriangleright t$ tries to reduce the goal (or a given hypothesis) to `t`, and fails if it is not convertible to `t`. The following alternative ASCII notation is also supported $\wedge f$, $> *$, $< D$ `t`, and $> t$.

```

definition double (x : nat) := x + x

variable f : nat → nat

example (x y : nat) (H1 : double x = 0) (H3 : f 0 = 0) : f (x + x) = 0 :=
by rewrite [↑double at H1, H1, H3]

```

The step `↑double at H1` unfolds `double` in the hypothesis `H1`. The notation `rewrite [↑f_1, ..., ↑f_n]` is shorthand for `rewrite [↑f_1, ..., ↑f_n]`

The tactic `esimp` is a shorthand for `rewrite ►*`. Here are two simple examples:

```

open sigma nat

example (x y : nat) (H : (fun (a : nat), pr1 ⟨a, y⟩) x = 0) : x = 0 :=
begin
  esimp at H,
  exact H
end

example (x y : nat) (H : x = 0) : (fun (a : nat), pr1 ⟨a, y⟩) x = 0 :=
begin
  esimp,
  exact H
end

```

Here is an example where the `fold` step is used to replace `a + 1` with `f a` in the main goal.

```

open nat

definition foo [irreducible] (x : nat) := x + 1

example (a b : nat) (H : foo a = b) : a + 1 = b :=
begin
  rewrite ↓foo a,
  exact H
end

```

Here is another example: given any type `A`, we show that the `list A` append operation `s ++ t` is associative. We discharge the inductive cases using the `rewrite` tactic. The base case is solved by applying reflexivity, because `nil ++ t ++ u` and `nil ++ (t ++ u)` are definitionally equal. In the inductive step, we first reduce the goal `a :: s ++ t ++ u = a :: s ++ (t ++ u)` to `a :: (s ++ t ++ u) = a :: s ++ (t ++ u)` by applying the reduction step `► a :: (l ++ t ++ u) = _`. The idea is to expose the term `l ++ t ++ u` that can be rewritten using the inductive hypothesis `append_assoc (s t u : list A) : s ++ t ++ u = s ++ (t ++ u)`. Notice that we used a placeholder `_` in the right-hand-side of this reduction step. This placeholder is unified with the right-hand-side of the main goal. Using this placeholder, we do not have to “copy” the goal’s right-hand-side.

```

import data.list
open list
variable {A : Type}

theorem append_assoc :  $\forall$  (s t u : list A), s ++ t ++ u = s ++ (t ++ u)
| append_assoc nil t u      := by apply rfl
| append_assoc (a :: l) t u :=
  begin
    rewrite  $\triangleright$  a :: (l ++ t ++ u) = _,
    rewrite append_assoc
  end

```

The `rewrite` tactic supports type classes. In the following example we use theorems from the `mul_zero_class` and `add_monoid` classes in an example for the `comm_ring` class. The rewrite is acceptable because every `comm_ring` (commutative ring) is an instance of the classes `mul_zero_class` and `add_monoid`.

```

import algebra.ring
open algebra

example {A : Type} [s : comm_ring A] (a b c : A) : a * 0 + 0 * b + c * 0 + 0 * a = 0 :=
begin
  rewrite [+mul_zero, +zero_mul, +add_zero]
end

```

11.7 Tactics as a Programming Language

[This section still under construction]

```

example (a b c d : Prop) : a  $\wedge$  b  $\wedge$  c  $\wedge$  d  $\leftrightarrow$  d  $\wedge$  c  $\wedge$  b  $\wedge$  a :=
begin
  apply iff.intro,
  repeat (intro H; repeat (cases H with [H', H] | apply and.intro | assumption))
end

```

```

#+ENDSRC
#+ENDSRC

```

```

open tactic

theorem tst {A B : Prop} (H1 : A) (H2 : B) : A :=
by (trace "first"; state; now |
    trace "second"; state; fail |
    trace "third"; assumption)

```

Axioms

We have seen that the version of the Calculus of Inductive Constructions that has been implemented in Lean includes Pi types, and inductive types, and a nested hierarchy of universes with an impredicative, proof-irrelevant **Prop** at the bottom. In this chapter, we consider extensions of the CIC with additional axioms and rules. Extending a foundational system in such a way is often convenient; it can make it possible to prove more theorems, as well as easier to prove theorems that could have been proved otherwise. But there can be negative consequences of adding additional axioms, consequences which may go beyond concerns about their correctness.

Lean’s standard library makes available a number of “classical” axioms, which are justified on a set-theoretic interpretation of type theory. But these axioms are at odds with a constructive interpretation of the system, as well as its computational behavior. When you import the standard library, most of these axioms are therefore not imported by default.

The standard library does, however, make use of two mildly classical extensions, namely, propositional extensionality and quotients. Their use in core parts of the standard library is still provisional, and may be curtailed if it proves to have sufficiently bad computational effects. The next section aims to clarify some of the issues and concerns.

[Note: parts of this chapter are still under construction.]

12.1 Computation and Axioms

For most of its history, mathematics was essentially computational: geometry dealt with constructions of geometric objects, algebra was concerned with algorithmic solutions to systems of equations, and analysis provided means to compute the future behavior of

systems evolving over time. From the proof of a theorem to the effect that “for every x , there is a y such that ...” is was generally straightforward to extract an algorithm to compute such a y given x .

In the nineteenth century, however, increases in the complexity of mathematical arguments pushed mathematicians to develop new styles of reasoning that suppress algorithmic information, and invoke descriptions of mathematical objects that abstract away the details of how those objects are represented. The goal was to obtain a powerful “conceptual” understanding without getting bogged down in computational details, but this had the effect of admitting mathematical theorems that are simply *false* on a direct computational reading.

There is still fairly uniform agreement today that computation is important to mathematics. But there are different views as to how best to address computational concerns. From a *constructive* point of view, it is a mistake to separate mathematics from its computational roots; every meaningful mathematical theorem should have a direct computational interpretation. From a *classical* point of view, it is more fruitful to maintain a separation of concerns: we can use one language and body of methods to write computer programs, while maintaining the freedom to use a nonconstructive theories and methods to reason about them.

Lean is designed to support both of these approaches. Core parts of the library are developed constructively, but the system also provides support for carrying out classical mathematical reasoning.

Computationally, the “purest” part of dependent type theory avoids the use of `Prop` entirely. Inductive types and `Pi` types can be viewed as data types, and terms of these types can be “evaluated” by applying reduction rules until no more rules can be applied. In principle, any closed term (that is, term with no free variables) of type \mathbb{N} should evaluate to a numeral, `succ (succ (succ ... 0))`.

Introducing a proof-irrelevant `Prop` and marking theorems `opaque` represents a first step towards separation of concerns. The intention is that elements of a type $P : \text{Prop}$ should play no role in computation, and so the particular construction of a term $t : P$ is “irrelevant” in that sense. One can still define computational objects that incorporate elements of type `Prop`; the point is that these elements can help us reason about the effects of the computation, but can be ignored when we extract “code” from the term. Elements of type `Prop` are not entirely innocuous, however. They include equations $s = t : A$ for any type A , and such equations can be used as casts, to type check terms.

Having adopted a proof-irrelevant `Prop`, one might consider it legitimate to add arbitrary classical axioms, such as the law of the excluded middle, governing propositions. From a constructive point of view, the most objectionable classical axioms are “choice axioms” that allow us to extract “data” from any existential proposition, completely erasing the distinction between the proof-irrelevant and data-relevant parts of the theory. These are discussed in Section 12.6 below.

12.2 Propositional Extensionality

Propositional extensionality is the following axiom:

```
axiom propext {a b : Prop} : (a ↔ b) → a = b
```

It asserts that when two propositions imply one another, they are actually equal. This is consistent with set-theoretic interpretations in which any element $a : \text{Prop}$ is either empty or the singleton set $\{*\}$, for some distinguished element $*$. The axiom has the effect that equivalent propositions can be substituted for one another in any context:

```
section
  open eq.ops
  variables a b c d e : Prop
  variable P : Prop → Prop

  example (H : a ↔ b) : (c ∧ a ∧ d → e) ↔ (c ∧ b ∧ d → e) :=
    propext H ► !iff.refl

  example (H : a ↔ b) (H1 : P a) : P b :=
    propext H ► H1
end
```

The first example could be proved more laboriously without `propext` using the fact that the propositional connectives respect propositional equivalence. The second example represents a more essential use of `propext`. In fact, it is equivalent to `propext` itself, a fact which we encourage you to prove.

12.3 Function Extensionality

Similar to propositional extensionality, function extensionality is the following axiom:

```
axiom funext {A : Type} {B : A → Type} {f₁ f₂ : Πx : A, B x} :
  (∀x, f₁ x = f₂ x) → f₁ = f₂
```

It asserts that any two functions of type $\Pi x : A, B\ x$ that agree on all their inputs are equal. From a classical, set-theoretic perspective, this is exactly what it means for two functions to be equal. This is known as an “extensional” view of functions. From a constructive perspective, however, it is sometimes more natural to think of functions as algorithms, or computer programs, that are presented in some explicit way. It is certainly the case that two computer programs can compute the same answer for every input despite the fact that they are syntactically quite different. In much the same way, you might want to maintain a view of functions that does not force you to identify two functions that have

the same input / output behavior. This is known as an “intensional” view of functions. Adopting `funext` commits us to an extensional view of functions.

Suppose that for $X : \text{Type}$ we define the `set` $X := X \rightarrow \text{Prop}$ to denote the type of subsets of X , essentially identifying subsets with predicates. By combining `funext` and `propext`, we obtain an extensional theory of such sets:

```

definition set (X : Type) := X → Prop

namespace set

variable {X : Type}

definition mem [reducible] (x : X) (a : set X) := a x
notation e ∈ a := mem e a

theorem setext {a b : set X} (H : ∀x, x ∈ a ↔ x ∈ b) : a = b :=
funext (take x, propext (H x))

end set

```

We can then proceed to define the empty set and set intersection, for example, and prove set identities:

```

definition empty [reducible] : set X := λx, false
notation ∅ := empty

definition inter [reducible] (a b : set X) : set X := λx, x ∈ a ∧ x ∈ b
notation a ∩ b := inter a b

theorem inter_self (a : set X) : a ∩ a = a :=
setext (take x, !and_self)

theorem inter_empty (a : set X) : a ∩ ∅ = ∅ :=
setext (take x, !and_false)

theorem empty_inter (a : set X) : ∅ ∩ a = ∅ :=
setext (take x, !false_and)

theorem inter.comm (a b : set X) : a ∩ b = b ∩ a :=
setext (take x, !and.comm)

```

In fact, function extensionality follows from the existence of quotients, which we describe in the next section. In the Lean standard library, therefore, `funext` is thus **proved from the quotient construction**.

12.4 Quotients

Let A be any type, and let R be an equivalence relation on A . It is mathematically common to form the “quotient” A / R , that is, the type of elements of A “modulo” R . Set theoretically,

one can view A / R as the set of equivalence classes of A modulo R . If $f : A \rightarrow B$ is any function that respects the equivalence relation in the sense that for every $x y : A$, $R x y$ implies $f x = f y$, then f “lifts” to a function $f' : A / R \rightarrow B$ defined on each equivalence class $[x]$ by $f' [x] = f x$. Lean’s standard library extends the CIC with additional constants that perform exactly these constructions, and installs this last equation as a definitional reduction rule.

First, it is useful to define the notion of a *setoid*, which is simply a type with an associated equivalence relation:

```

structure setoid [class] (A : Type) :=
  (r : A → A → Prop) (iseqv : equivalence r)

namespace setoid
  infix `≈` := setoid.r

  variable {A : Type}
  variable [s : setoid A]
  include s

  theorem refl (a : A) : a ≈ a :=
    and.elim_left (@setoid.iseqv A s) a

  theorem symm {a b : A} : a ≈ b → b ≈ a :=
    λ H, and.elim_left (and.elim_right (@setoid.iseqv A s)) a b H

  theorem trans {a b c : A} : a ≈ b → b ≈ c → a ≈ c :=
    λ H1 H2, and.elim_right (and.elim_right (@setoid.iseqv A s)) a b c H1 H2
end setoid

```

Given a type A , a relation R on A , and a proof p that R is an equivalence relation, we can define `setoid.mk p` as an instance of the `setoid` class. Lean’s type class inference mechanism then allows us to use the generic notation \approx for R , and to use the generic theorems `setoid.refl`, `setoid.symm`, `setoid.trans` to reason about R .

The quotient package consists of the following constructors:

```

open setoid
constant quot.{1} : Π {A : Type.{1}}, setoid A → Type.{1}

namespace quot
  constant mk : Π {A : Type} [s : setoid A], A → quot s
  notation `⌊a⌋` : max a `⌊⌋` : 0 := mk a

  constant sound : Π {A : Type} [s : setoid A] {a b : A}, a ≈ b → ⌊a⌋ = ⌊b⌋
  constant exact : Π {A : Type} [s : setoid A] {a b : A}, ⌊a⌋ = ⌊b⌋ → a ≈ b
  constant lift : Π {A B : Type} [s : setoid A] (f : A → B), (∀ a b, a ≈ b → f a = f b) → quot s → B
  constant ind : ∀ {A : Type} [s : setoid A] {B : quot s → Prop}, (∀ a, B ⌊a⌋) → ∀ q, B q
end quot

```

For any type A with associated equivalence relation R , first we declare a `setoid` instance `s` to associate R as “the” equivalence relation on A . Once we do that, `quot s` denotes the

quotient type A / R , and given $a : A$, $\llbracket a \rrbracket$ denotes the “equivalence class” of a . The meaning of constants `sound`, `exact`, `lift`, and `ind` are given by their types. In particular, `lift` is the function which lifts a function $f : A \rightarrow B$ that respects the equivalence relation to the function `lift f` : `quot s` $\rightarrow B$ which lifts f to A / R . After declaring the constants associated with the quotient type, the library file then calls an internal function, `init_quotient`, which installs the reduction that simplifies `lift f` $\llbracket a \rrbracket$ to $f a$.

In the standard library, $A \times B$ represents the Cartesian product of the types A and B . We can view it as the type of pairs (a, b) where $a : A$ and $b : B$. We can use quotient types to define the type of unordered pairs of type A . We can use the notation $\{a_1, a_2\}$ to represent the unordered pair containing a_1 and a_2 . Moreover, we want to be able to prove the equality $\{a_1, a_2\} = \{a_2, a_1\}$. We start this construction by defining a relation $p \sim q$ on $A \times A$.

```
import data.prod
open prod prod.ops quot

private definition eqv {A : Type} (p1 p2 : A × A) : Prop :=
  (p1.1 = p2.1 ∧ p1.2 = p2.2) ∨ (p1.1 = p2.2 ∧ p1.2 = p2.1)

infix `~` := eqv
```

To make the proofs more compact, we open the namespaces `eq` and `or`. Thus, we can write `symm`, `trans`, `inl` and `inr` instead of `eq.symm`, `eq.trans`, `or.inl` and `or.inr` respectively. We also define the notation $\langle H_1, H_2 \rangle$ for `(and.intro H1 H2)`.

```
open eq or

local notation `⟨` H1 `,` H2 `⟩` := and.intro H1 H2
```

The next step is to prove that `eqv` is an equivalence relation. That is, it is reflexive, symmetric and transitive. We can prove these three facts in a convenient and readable way using dependent pattern matching. The idea is to use dependent pattern matching to perform case-analysis and “break” the hypotheses into pieces that are then reassembled to produce the conclusion.

```
private theorem eqv.refl {A : Type} : ∀ p : A × A, p ~ p :=
  take p, inl ⟨rfl, rfl⟩

private theorem eqv.symm {A : Type} : ∀ p1 p2 : A × A, p1 ~ p2 → p2 ~ p1
| (a1, a2) (b1, b2) (inl ⟨a1b1, a2b2⟩) := inl ⟨symm a1b1, symm a2b2⟩
| (a1, a2) (b1, b2) (inr ⟨a1b2, a2b1⟩) := inr ⟨symm a2b1, symm a1b2⟩

private theorem eqv.trans {A : Type} : ∀ p1 p2 p3 : A × A, p1 ~ p2 → p2 ~ p3 → p1 ~ p3
| (a1, a2) (b1, b2) (c1, c2) (inl ⟨a1b1, a2b2⟩) (inl ⟨b1c1, b2c2⟩) :=
  inl ⟨trans a1b1 b1c1, trans a2b2 b2c2⟩
```

```

| (a1, a2) (b1, b2) (c1, c2) (inl ⟨a1b1, a2b2⟩) (inr ⟨b1c2, b2c1⟩) :=
  inr ⟨trans a1b1 b1c2, trans a2b2 b2c1⟩
| (a1, a2) (b1, b2) (c1, c2) (inr ⟨a1b2, a2b1⟩) (inl ⟨b1c1, b2c2⟩) :=
  inr ⟨trans a1b2 b2c2, trans a2b1 b1c1⟩
| (a1, a2) (b1, b2) (c1, c2) (inr ⟨a1b2, a2b1⟩) (inr ⟨b1c2, b2c1⟩) :=
  inl ⟨trans a1b2 b2c1, trans a2b1 b1c2⟩

private theorem is_equivalence (A : Type) : equivalence (@eqv A) :=
mk_equivalence (@eqv A) (@eqv.refl A) (@eqv.symm A) (@eqv.trans A)

```

Now, that we have proved that `eqv` is an equivalence relation, we can construct a `setoid` $(A \times A)$, and use it to define the type `uprod A` of unordered pairs. Moreover, we define the unordered pair $\{a_1, a_2\}$ as $\llbracket (a_1, a_2) \rrbracket$.

```

definition uprod.setoid [instance] (A : Type) : setoid (A × A) :=
setoid.mk (@eqv A) (is_equivalence A)

definition uprod (A : Type) : Type :=
quot (uprod.setoid A)

namespace uprod
  definition mk {A : Type} (a1 a2 : A) : uprod A :=
    ⌊(a1, a2)⌋

  notation `{` a1 `,` a2 `}` := mk a1 a2
end uprod

```

Now, we can easily prove that $\{a_1, a_2\} = \{a_2, a_1\}$ using the `quot.sound` since $(a_1, a_2) \sim (a_2, a_1)$.

```

theorem mk_eq_mk {A : Type} (a1 a2 : A) : {a1, a2} = {a2, a1} :=
quot.sound (inr ⟨rfl, rfl⟩)

```

To complete the example, given $a : A$ and $u : \text{uprod } A$, we define the proposition $a \in u$ which should hold if a is one of the elements of the unordered pair u . First, we define a similar proposition `mem_fn a u` on (ordered) pairs, then we show that `mem_fn` respects the equivalence relation `eqv` in the lemma `mem_respects`. This is an idiom extensively used in the Lean standard library.

```

private definition mem_fn {A : Type} (a : A) : A × A → Prop
| (a1, a2) := a = a1 ∨ a = a2

-- Auxiliary lemma for proving mem_respects
private lemma mem_swap {A : Type} {a : A} : ∀ {p : A × A}, mem_fn a p = mem_fn a (swap p)
| (a1, a2) := propext (iff.intro
  (λ l : a = a1 ∨ a = a2, or.elim l (λ h1, inr h1) (λ h2, inl h2))
  (λ r : a = a2 ∨ a = a1, or.elim r (λ h1, inr h1) (λ h2, inl h2)))

```

```

private lemma mem_respects {A : Type} : ∀ {p₁ p₂ : A × A} (a : A), p₁ ~ p₂ → mem_fn a p₁ = mem_fn a p₂
| (a₁, a₂) (b₁, b₂) a (inl ⟨a₁b₁, a₂b₂⟩) :=
  begin esimp at a₁b₁, esimp at a₂b₂, rewrite [a₁b₁, a₂b₂] end
| (a₁, a₂) (b₁, b₂) a (inr ⟨a₁b₂, a₂b₁⟩) :=
  begin esimp at a₁b₂, esimp at a₂b₁, rewrite [a₁b₂, a₂b₁], apply mem_swap end

definition mem {A : Type} (a : A) (u : uprod A) : Prop :=
quot.lift_on u (λ p, mem_fn a p) (λ p₁ p₂ e, mem_respects a e)

infix `⊆` := mem

theorem mem_mk_left {A : Type} (a b : A) : a ⊆ {a, b} :=
inl rfl

theorem mem_mk_right {A : Type} (a b : A) : b ⊆ {a, b} :=
inr rfl

theorem mem_or_mem_of_mem_mk {A : Type} {a b c : A} : c ⊆ {a, b} → c = a ∨ c = b :=
λ h, h

```

12.5 Excluded Middle

The law of the excluded middle is the following:

```

axiom em (a : Prop) : a ∨ ¬a

```

You can import this axiom with `import logic.axioms.em`. It is automatically imported by `import logic.axioms.classical`, or, more simply, `import classical`.

The law of the excluded middle and propositional extensionality imply propositional completeness:

```

theorem prop_complete (a : Prop) : a = true ∨ a = false :=
or.elim (em a)
(λ t, or.inl (propext (iff.intro (λ h, trivial) (λ h, t))))
(λ f, or.inr (propext (iff.intro (λ h, absurd h f) (λ h, false.elim h))))

```

12.6 Choice Axioms

The last of the classical axioms we consider is the following choice axiom:

```

axiom strong_indefinite_description {A : Type} (P : A → Prop) (H : nonempty A) :
{ x | (∃ y : A, P y) → P x }

```

This asserts that given any predicate P on a nonempty type A , we can (magically) produce an element x with the property that if any element of A satisfies P , then x does. In the presence of classical logic, we could prove this from the slightly weaker axiom:

```
axiom indefinite_description {A : Type} {P : A → Prop} (H : ∃x, P x) :
  {x : A | P x}
```

This says that knowing that there is an element of A satisfying P is enough to produce one. This axiom essentially undoes the separation of data from propositions, because it allows us to extract a piece of data — an element of A satisfying P — from the proposition that such an element exists.

The axiom `strong_indefinite_description` is imported when you import the classical axioms. Separating the x asserted to exist by the axiom from the property it satisfies allows us to define the Hilbert epsilon function:

```
opaque definition epsilon {A : Type} [H : nonempty A] (P : A → Prop) : A :=
let u : {x | (∃y, P y) → P x} :=
  strong_indefinite_description P H in
elt_of u

theorem epsilon_spec_aux {A : Type} (H : nonempty A) (P : A → Prop) (Hex : ∃y, P y) :
  P (@epsilon A H P) :=
let u : {x | (∃y, P y) → P x} :=
  strong_indefinite_description P H in
has_property u Hex

theorem epsilon_spec {A : Type} {P : A → Prop} (Hex : ∃y, P y) :
  P (@epsilon A (nonempty_of_exists Hex) P) :=
epsilon_spec_aux (nonempty_of_exists Hex) P Hex
```

Assuming the type A is nonempty, `epsilon P` returns an element of A , with the property that if any element of A satisfies P , `epsilon P` does.

Just as `indefinite_description` is a weaker version of `strong_indefinite_description`, the `some` operator is a weaker version of the `epsilon` operator. It is sometimes easier to use. Assuming $H : \exists x, P x$ is a proof that some element of A satisfies P , `some H` denotes such an element.

```
definition some {A : Type} {P : A → Prop} (H : ∃x, P x) : A :=
@epsilon A (nonempty_of_exists H) P

theorem some_spec {A : Type} {P : A → Prop} (H : ∃x, P x) : P (some H) :=
epsilon_spec H
```

In Section 8.7, we explained that, on some occasions, it is necessary to use `assert` instead of `have` to put auxiliary goals into the context so that the elaborator can find them. This often comes up in connection to `epsilon` and `some`, because these induce dependencies on elements of `Prop`. The following examples illustrate some of the places where `assert` is needed. A good rule of thumb is that if you are using `some` or `epsilon`, and you are presented with a strange error message, trying changing `have` to `assert`.

```

import logic.axioms.hilbert

section
  variable A : Type
  variable a : A

  -- o.k.
  example :  $\exists x : A, x = x :=$ 
  have H1 :  $\exists y, y = y$ , from exists.intro a rfl,
  have H2 : some H1 = some H1, from some_spec H1,
  exists.intro (some H1) H2

  /-
  -- invalid local context
  example :  $\exists x : A, x = x :=$ 
  have H1 :  $\exists y, y = y$ , from exists.intro a rfl,
  have H2 : some H1 = some H1, from some_spec H1,
  exists.intro _ H2
  -/

  -- o.k.
  example :  $\exists x : A, x = x :=$ 
  assert H1 :  $\exists y, y = y$ , from exists.intro a rfl,
  have H2 : some H1 = some H1, from some_spec H1,
  exists.intro _ H2

  /-
  -- invalid local context
  example :  $\exists x : A, x = x :=$ 
  have H1 :  $\exists y, y = y$ , from exists.intro a rfl,
  have H2 : some H1 = some H1, from some_spec H1,
  exists.intro (some H1) (eq.trans H2 H2)
  -/

  -- o.k.
  example :  $\exists x : A, x = x :=$ 
  assert H1 :  $\exists y, y = y$ , from exists.intro a rfl,
  have H2 : some H1 = some H1, from some_spec H1,
  exists.intro (some H1) (eq.trans H2 H2)
end

```

12.7 Propositional Decidability

Taken together, the law of the excluded middle and the axiom of indefinite description imply that every proposition is decidable. The following is the contained in `logic.axioms.prop_decidable`:

```

theorem decidable_inhabited [instance] (a : Prop) : inhabited (decidable a) :=
inhabited_of_nonempty
  (or.elim (em a)
    (assume Ha, nonempty.intro (inl Ha))
    (assume Hna, nonempty.intro (inr Hna)))

```

```

theorem prop_decidable [instance] (a : Prop) : decidable a :=
arbitrary (decidable a)

```

The theorem `decidable_inhabited` uses the law of the excluded middle to show that `decidable a` is inhabited for any `a`. It is marked as an instance, and is silently used for synthesizing the implicit argument in `arbitrary (decidable a)`.

Now, as an example, we use `some` to prove that if $f : A \rightarrow B$ is injective, and A is inhabited, then f has a left inverse. To define the left inverse `linv`, we use the “dependent if-then-else” expression. Recall that `if h : c then t else e` is notation for `dite c (λ h : c, t) (λ h : ¬ c, e)`. In the definition of `linv`, the `strong_indefinite_description` is used twice. First, to show that $(\exists a : A, f a = b)$ is “decidable”, and then to choose an `a` such that $f a = b$. From a classical point of view, `linv` is a function. From a constructive point of view, it is unacceptable, there is no way to “implement” such a function in general. Some may claim it is a “non-informative” construction.

```

import algebra.function logic.axioms.classical
open function

definition linv {A B : Type} [h : inhabited A] (f : A → B) : B → A :=
λ b : B, if ex : (∃ a : A, f a = b) then some ex else arbitrary A

theorem has_left_inverse_of_injective {A B : Type} {f : A → B}
  : inhabited A → injective f → ∃ g, g ∘ f = id :=
assume h : inhabited A,
assume inj : ∀ a1 a2, f a1 = f a2 → a1 = a2,
have is_linv : (linv f) ∘ f = id, from
  funext (λ a,
    assert ex : ∃ a1 : A, f a1 = f a, from exists.intro a rfl,
    have feq : f (some ex) = f a, from !some_spec,
    calc linv f (f a) = some ex : dif_pos ex
      ... = a : inj _ _ feq),
exists.intro (linv f) is_linv

```

12.8 Diaconescu’s theorem

Diaconescu’s theorem states that the axiom of choice is sufficient to derive the law of excluded middle. The standard library contains a **formalization of this result**. To be more precise, it shows that the law excluded middle follows from `strong_indefinite_description` (Hilbert’s choice), `propext` (propositional extensionality) and `funext` (function extensionality).

12.9 Constructive Choice

In the standard library, we say a type `A` is **encodable** if there are functions $f : A \rightarrow \text{nat}$ and $g : \text{nat} \rightarrow \text{option } A$ such that for all `a : A`, $g (f a) = \text{some } a$. Here is the actual

definition:

```
structure encodable [class] (A : Type) :=
  (encode : A → nat) (decode : nat → option A) (encodek : ∀ a, decode (encode a) = some a)
```

The standard library shows that `indefinite_description` axiom is actually a theorem for any encodable type `A` and decidable predicate `p : A → Prop`, and provides the following definition and theorem that realizes the `some` and `some_spec`.

```
check @choose
-- choose : Π {A : Type} {p : A → Prop} [c : encodable A] [d : decidable_pred p], (∃ (x : A), p x) → A
check @choose_spec
-- choose_spec : ∀ {A : Type} {p : A → Prop} [c : encodable A] [d : decidable_pred p] (ex : ∃ (x : A), p x), p (choose ex)
```

The construction is straightforward, it finds `a : A` satisfying `p` by enumerating the elements of `A` and testing whether they satisfy `p` or not. We can show that this search always terminates because we have the assumption $\exists (x : A), p\ x$.

Now, we provide a constructive version of the theorem `has_left_inverse_of_injective`. We remark this is not the only possible version. The constructive version contains more hypotheses (parameters). Using Bishop's terminology, it avoids *pseudo-generality*. From the previous construction, it is clear that we can construct the left inverse whenever we can decide whether `b` is in the image of a function `f : A → B`, and we can *choose*.

```
import data.encodable algebra.function
open encodable function

section
  parameters {A B : Type}
  parameter (f : A → B)
  parameter [inhA : inhabited A]
  parameter [dex : ∀ b, decidable (∃ a, f a = b)]
  parameter [encB : encodable B]
  parameter [deqB : decidable_eq B]
  include inhA dex encB deqB

  definition finv : B → A :=
    λ b : B, if ex : (∃ a, f a = b) then choose ex else arbitrary A

  theorem has_left_inverse_of_injective : injective f → has_left_inverse f :=
    assume inj : ∀ a1 a2, f a1 = f a2 → a1 = a2,
    have is_linv : finv ∘ f = id, from
      funext (λ a,
        assert ex : ∃ a1, f a1 = f a, from exists.intro a rfl,
        have feq : f (choose ex) = f a, from !choose_spec,
        calc finv (f a) = choose ex : dif_pos ex
          ... = a : inj _ _ feq),
    exists.intro finv is_linv
end
```

It is essentially the same proof, we just replaced `some` with the constructive choice function `choose`, and added three extra hypotheses: `dex`, `encB` and `deqB`. The first one makes sure we can decide whether a value `b` is in the image of `f` or not, and the last two are needed for the constructive choice function `choose`. The standard library contains many `encodable` types and shows that many types have decidable equality. The hypothesis `dex` can be satisfied in many cases. For example, it is trivially satisfied if `f` is surjective. We can also satisfy it whenever `A` is finite.

```

section
  parameters {A B : Type} (f : A → B)

  definition decidable_in_image_of_surjective : surjective f → ∀ b, decidable (∃ a, f a = b) :=
  assume s : surjective f, take b,
  decidable.inl (s b)

  definition decidable_in_image_of_fintype_of_deceq [instance]
    [finA : fintype A] [deqB : decidable_eq B] : ∀ b, decidable (∃ a, f a = b) :=
  take b, decidable_exists_finite
end

```

Bibliography

- [1] Thierry Coquand and Gerard Huet. The calculus of constructions. *Inf. Comput.*, 76(2-3):95–120, February 1988.
- [2] Peter Dybjer. Inductive families. *Formal Asp. Comput.*, 6(4):440–465, 1994.
- [3] Healfdene Goguen, Conor McBride, and James McKinna. Eliminating dependent pattern matching. In Kokichi Futatsugi, Jean-Pierre Jouannaud, and José Meseguer, editors, *Algebra, Meaning, and Computation, Essays Dedicated to Joseph A. Goguen on the Occasion of His 65th Birthday*, volume 4060 of *Lecture Notes in Computer Science*, pages 521–540. Springer, 2006.
- [4] Frank Pfenning and Christine Paulin-Mohring. Inductively defined types in the calculus of constructions. In Michael G. Main, Austin Melton, Michael W. Mislove, and David A. Schmidt, editors, *Mathematical Foundations of Programming Semantics, 5th International Conference, Tulane University, New Orleans, Louisiana, USA, March 29 - April 1, 1989, Proceedings*, volume 442 of *Lecture Notes in Computer Science*, pages 209–228. Springer, 1989.